# This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations and is not a part of the Official Record

## **BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES**

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

## IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning documents will not correct images,
Please do not report the images to the
Image Problem Mailbox.

DOCKET NO.: SPC-948/DSSING & REVISIO

## RECEIVED APR 2 4 2002

**TECH CENTER 1600/2900** 

TEVEL TEVEL

N THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Re Application of:

10/01873.

Kevan Hatchman, Elvin Lukenbach, Laura McCulloch, Benjamin Wiegand

Serial No.: 10/018,238

Filing Date: December 7, 2001

Group Art Unit: Not yet assigned

Examiner: Not yet assigned

PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS For:

DATE OF DEPOSIT: \_

I HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THIS PAPER IS BEING DEPOSITED WITH THE UNITED STATES POSTAL SERVICE AS FIRST CLASS MAIL, POSTAGE PREPAID ON THE DATE INDICATED ABOVE AND IS ADDRESSED TO ATTENTION: OFFICE OF PETITIONS, BOX DAC, ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS, WASHINGTON, DC 20231.

Wendy A. Choi, Esquire REGISTRATION NO.: 36,897

**BOX DAC** Office of Petitions **Assistant Commissioner for Patents** Washington, DC 20231

### PETITION FOR RETROACTIVE LICENSE UNDER 37 CFR 5.25

It is respectfully requested that this petition for license for foreign filing attached hereto be granted retroactively under the provisions of 37 CFR 5.25.

| Previous Licenses (  applicable  not applicable) | RECEIVED            |
|--|---------------------|
| Attached are copies of:                          |                     |
| previous licenses                                | APR 1 7 2002        |
| previous licenses                                | OFFICE OF PETITIONS |
| the filing receipt license                       | 0.1102011211110110  |
| issued on this invention before the export.      |                     |

#### Material filed abroad without a license

Attached is a copy of the material that was filed abroad without a license for foreign filing.

04/16/2002 GTEFFERA 00000044 10018238

01 FC:122

130.00 GP

Foreign Countries and dates of filing of material for which retroactive license requested per 37 CFR 5.25(a)(1).

With respect to the material for which a retroactive license is requested, each foreign country in which the patent application material was filed and the date it was filed is as follows:

| Foreign Country Great Britain (UK Patent Office) | <b>Date</b> 10 June 1999 | Application No. GB 99 13408.2 |
|--|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Germany (EPO PCT Receiving Office)               | 9 June 2000              | WO 00/76460                   |
| Germany (European Patent Office)                 | 5 December 2001          | EP 00945731.8                 |
| Australia  | 7 December 2001          | ASL 59716/00                  |

#### Verified Statement(s)

Also attached hereto are the verified statement(s) (oath or declaration) of:

Wendy A. Choi, Esq. attorney for Johnson & Johnson Consumer Companies, Inc., joins assignee of 10/018,238

which confirm(s) that, in accordance with 37 CFR 5.25(a)(3)(I)-(iii),

- (a) the subject matter in question was not under a secrecy order at the time it was filed abroad, and that it is not currently under a secrecy order;
- (b) the license is being diligently sought after discovery of the proscribed foreign filing; and
- (c) an explanation of why the material was filed abroad through error and without deceptive intent without the required license under §5.11 first having been obtained.

**RECEIVED** 

APR 1 7 2002

OFFICE OF PETITIONS

## Fee under 37 CFR 1.17(h) \$130.00

- A Check is Enclosed in the Foregoing Amount Due.
- The Commissioner is further authorized to charge any fees related to any such extension of time to deposit account 23-3050. This sheet is provided in duplicate.

Date: April 9, 2002

Registration No. 36,697

Woodcock Washburn LLP One Liberty Place - 46th Floor Philadelphia PA 19103

Telephone: (215) 568-3100 Facsimile: (215) 568-3439

©2001 WW

RECEIVED

APR 1 7 2002

OFFICE OF PETITIONS.

DOCKET NO.: SPC-948 US

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE ECH C

n re patent application of :

Kevin Hatchman, Elvin Lukenbach, La

McCulloch and Benjamin Wiegand.

Serial No.:

10/018,238

Group No.

Not yet assigned

**Filed** 

12/07/01

**Examiner** 

Not yet assigned

For

PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

RECEIVED

**BOX DAC** Office of Petitions **Assistant Commissioner for Patents** Washington, D.C. 20231

APR 1 7 2002

OFFICE OF PETITIONS

Dear Sir:

### STATEMENT OF FACTS REGARDING FAILURE TO SEEK U.S. FOREIGN FILING LICENSE UNDER 35 U.S.C § 184

Applicants respectfully request a retroactively granted license under 35 U.S.C. § 1811 to the subject matter of GB 9913408.2, WO 00/76460 and related national stage applications, which were filed outside of the U.S. without a prior license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks through error and without deceptive intent.

#### Summary of Facts

The subject matter of GB 9913408.2, WO 00/76460 and related national stage applications is directed to personal care formulations, such as shampoo and body wash. More specifically, the subject matter relates to clear, gel-like personal care formulations that contain surfactant, oil and water. The oil may be a mineral oil, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil and the surfactant has an HLB of 2-10.

The technology that is the subject-matter of the applications was jointly developed by Albright & Wilson Surfactants, a subsidiary of Rhodia Consumer Specialities, Ltd. (A&W) and Johnson & Johnson Consumer Companies, Inc. (J&J). A&W is located in the U.K. and develops and manufactures gels. J&J is located in the U.S. and develops, manufactures and sells hair and skin care products. The two parties were working together initially under a secrecy agreement and eventually under a joint development agreement to develop suitable A&W gels for J&J's hair and skin care products.

During a teleconference between personnel of both parties on June 6, 1999, J&J was informed by A&W that A&W intended to file a provisional British patent application directed to an invention made solely by personnel of A&W. Without DOCK T NO.: SPC-948 US

review by any personnel at J&J, this application (GB 9913408.2) was filed on June 10, 1999 by Mr. Roger Savidge, a patent attorney for Rhodia. As a provisional British patent application, it did not name any inventors (only A&W as the applicant). A copy of the application, as filed, was faxed to J&J on June 10, 1999 (Exhibit 1). After reviewing the patent application, J&J determined that J&J personnel (who made the invention in the U.S.) were at least joint inventors on the provisional British patent application. Through ignorance of the requirement, neither party realized that, because the invention disclosed in the British application was at least partially made in the U.S., that it was necessary to seek a foreign filing license in the U.S. prior to filing the British application.

On the eve of the Paris Convention deadline of June 9, 2000, Mr. Savidge contacted Ms. Michele Mangini, a patent attorney with J&J, to discuss filing a PCT application based upon the provisional British application by June 9, 2000. On June 8, 2000, Ms. Mangini signed, as Assistant Secretary of J&J, and returned via facsimile a document appointing Mr. Savidge as the representative for the PCT application (Exhibit 2).

The PCT application was filed on June 9, 2000 (WO 00/76460)(*Exhibit 3*). There were four inventors listed on the PCT application:

- (1) Kevan HATCHMAN (A&W)
- (2) Elvin LUKENBACH (J&J)
- (3) Laura McCULLOCH (J&J)
- (4) Benjamin WIEGAND (J&J)

Inventors (2)-(4) made at least a part of their contribution to the claimed invention in the U.S. and while residing in the U.S. Mr. Savidge handled the prosecution of the PCT application with input from J&J. The PCT application is essentially identical to the provisional British application. In haste to secure a filing date and again through continuing ignorance of the requirement, neither party realized that, because the invention disclosed in the British and PCT applications was at least partially made in the U.S., that it was necessary to seek a foreign filing license in the U.S. prior to filing the PCT application and seek a retroactive license with respect to the provisional British application.

At the 30-month deadline for entering Chapter II of the PCT, Mr. Savidge engaged a U.S. patent attorney, Mr. Marshall Chick of FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN, LANGER & CHICK, to file a U.S. national application (SN 10/018,238 on December 7, 2001) based on the PCT application. National applications were also filed at the EPO and in Australia, based on instructions from Mr. Savidge (*Exhibit 4* and *Exhibit 5*, respectively). Instructions were sent to a Canadian agent to file a Canadian national application. However, due to conflicting instructions by J&J, the Canadian agent did not file (and has not yet filed) the application in Canada (*Exhibit 6*). Applicants intend to file the application in Canada, provided that and only after the retroactive license requested herein is granted.

On or about January 15, 2002, Mr. Chick contacted J&J to collect details to prepare a post-filed declaration, power of attorney and assignment (*Exhibit 7*). In reviewing the application papers from Mr. Savidge, Mr. Chick discovered that there was no record of the granting of a U.S. foreign filing license. He inquired whether

J&J had sought a U.S. foreign filing license and could not confirm that either party had sought such a license.

On February 6, 2002, Mr. Chick forwarded the U.S. application to me (*Exhibit 8*), Wendy Choi of WOODCOCK WASHBURN LLP, a law firm now representing J&J, to handle the prosecution of the application, including seeking a retroactive foreign filing license.

I have reviewed all of the relevant documents and discussed the history of the filings with Ms. Mangini, Mr. Savidge and Dr. Wiegand. As a result of my review, I have prepared this statement of facts to support the petition for a retroactively granted license under 37 C.F.R. § 5.25.

#### Conclusion

Applicants respectfully request a retroactively granted license under 35 U.S.C. § 184 and 37 C.F.R. § 5.25 to the subject matter of GB 9913408.2 and WO 00/76460 and related national stage applications, which were filed outside of the U.S. without a license from the Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks. Applicants submit that:

- (1) the applications that were filed without the required licenses under 35 U.S.C. § 184 were filed through error and without deceptive intent;
- (2) the subject matter of the applications was not under a secrecy order under 35 U.S.C. § 181 at the time that the applications was filed abroad, and the subject matter is not currently under a secrecy order; and
- (3) they are promptly seeking a retroactive license under 35 U.S.C. § 184 and 37 C.F.R. § 5.25 after discovery of their error in not seeking the required license.

The required fee in accordance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.17(h) is enclosed.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both under 18 U.S.C. § 1001.

Respectfully submitted,

Wendy A. Chow

Registration No. 36,697 Attorney for Applicants

Date: April 9, 2002

WOODCOCK WASHBURN LLP One Liberty Place - 46th Floor Philadelphia, PA 19103

Telephone

(215) 568-3100

Facsimile

(215) 568-3439

RECEIVED

APR 1 7 2002

**OFFICE OF PETITIONS** 

# Exhibit 1

## fax message

| R G M Savidge Corporate Patents Mgr | Till 0121 420 5430                                |
|-------------------------------------|---|
|                                     | ਜੌ≘x 0121 420 5437                                |
| To Ben Wiegand                      | Org ! Johnson & Johnson<br>Fax : 001 908 874 1126 |
| Page   4 of 32                      | Data June 10, 1999  Ref: MPL315/GB/RGMS           |
| cc                                  | 7511  |

## ALBRIGHT & WILSON

Albright & Wilson UK Limited Patents Department P O 85x 3 210 - 222 Hagiey Road West Oldbury West Midlands 868 CNN

Facsimie +44 (0) 121 429 4942 F3csimie +44 (0) 121 429 5151

www.alonght-wilson.com

GB13408.2 filed 06/10/99 British Provisional Priority Document

Dear Ben

RINGING GEL TECHNOLOGY

As promised I enclose a copy of our informal preliminary patent application which was filed at the UK Patent Office loday in order to secure a priority date for a future substantive patent application to be filed within the next 12 months. This application does not specify the inventorship.

Please let me have any comments or suggested additions or modifications. If there are any points of substance I will file a further improved text.

I also enclose a copy of our EP O 598 335 which was filed six years ago and then abandoned. Our corresponding Canadian application may still be revivable until November of this year.

Regards.

RECEIVED

DEC 1 5 1999

MICHELE G. MANGINI

Encs

Albright & Wilson UK Limited Place of Registration - England Registered Number - 36833 Registered Office -210-222 Hagley Road West Clabury West Midlands 968 CNN



APR 1 7 2002

OFFICE OF PETITIONS

## PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

The present invention relates to shampoo or cleaning compositions suitable for personal care applications in the form of  $I_1$  mesophase systems containing dispersed oil.

Dispersing oil in aqueous shampoo and body wash formulations has presented problems. To prevent the oil phase separating it must either be: (A) emulsified which involves dispersing the oil as colloidal single cropiets: (B) microemulsified which involves forming a micellar solution with oil incorporated into surfactant micelles: (C) suspended in a structured surfactant system which typically comprises a dispersion of a surfactant mesophase in aqueous electrolyte; or (D) incorporated into a water soluble solid, pasty or gelatinous composition.

With the exception of microemulsions which are clear, thermodynamically stable, micellar solutions, the foregoing systems are necessarily opaque and contain the oil dispersed in a relatively coarse form, which does not deposit satisfactorily on skin or hair.

However microcmulsions are difficult to formulate using the surfactants which are most effective in body wash and other personal care formulations and contain relatively low concentrations of surfactant.

We have now discovered that oil may be stably incorporated into the structure of an I<sub>1</sub> phase to form a clear gel-like composition which contains higher concentrations of surfactant and oil than conventional microemulsions, but, which dissolves in water to form a microemulsion. The novel oil-in-I- compositions also form microemulsions on heating.

Surfactants are known to form mesophases or liquid crystal phases at concentrations above approximately 30% by weight based on the weight of water and surfactant. Mesophases are phases which exhibit a degree of order intermediate between typical liquids and solids. Generally mesophases combine long range order associated with crystals, with fast molecular motion common to liquids.

The formation of detergent mesophases is well documented. Different surfactants and surfactant mixtures differ widely in their ability to form the numerous different mesophases, and in respect of the conditions of concentration and temperature at which they are formed. For a typical surfactant of the type normally used in cleaning products the following mesophases are usually observed. The concentrations given are illustrative only and may vary considerably from one surfactant or surfactant mixture to the next.

Below approximately 30% surfactant an isotropic L<sub>1</sub> phase is formed (with micelles of surfactant in water). Above 30% surfactant many detergents form a M phase which is not normally used in personal care applications since it dos not show suitable flow characteristics and is difficult to dissolve or disperse in water. Above the concentrations required to form an M phase, but usually at concentrations of less than 80% active surfactant, i.e. 60%-80% a G-phase is formed. At concentrations higher than those required to form a G-phase, i.e. typically greater than 80% active surfactant, most surfactants form a hydrated solid, and some, especially non-ionic surfactants form a liquid phase containing dispersed micelle sized droplets of water - an inverted micellar solution known as an L<sub>2</sub> phase. L<sub>2</sub> detergent systems do not disperse readily in water and have a tendency to form undesirable gels, e.g. M phases, on dilution.

Some surfactants form viscous isotropic or VI phases. These are immobile phases usually with a vitrous appearance, and have been relatively little studied compared to the other phases discussed above. They have been virtually ignored in the context of formulating cleaning compositions because most of the surfactants and surfactant systems which are commonly used in cleaning compositions do not form VI phases, at least at normal temperatures, or form them only within narrow concentration ranges and because their known properties as immobile gels has deterred formulators from investigating them. They are recognised as being the most viscous of the lyotropic mesophases.

4 1

The different surfactant phases can be recognised by a combination of appearance, rheology, textures under the microscope, electron microscopy and x-ray diffraction or neutron scattering. A detailed description, with illustrations, of the difference textures observable using a polarising microscope, is to be found in the paper by Rosevear JAOCS Vol 31, p628.

The following terms may require explanation or definition:

The "hydrophilic: lipophilic balance", or "HLB" value is used as a measure of the relative affinities of the surfactants for water and oil respectively and correlates with their effectiveness as emulsifiers. HLB value can easily be calculated for alcohol ethoxylates since it is one rifth of the weight percent of ethylene oxide based on the total mole weight. Other surfactants can be assigned equivalent values by applying more complicated formulae or by measuring their relative affinity for water and oil. An HLB value of 20 represents a completely water soluble oil insoluble surfactant, while an HLB value of 0 represents a completely oil soluble and water insoluble surfactant.

Optically isotropic surfactant phases do not normally tend to rotate the plane of polarisation of plane polarised light. If a drop of sample is placed between two sheets of optically glane polarising material whose planes are at right angles, and light is shone on to one sheet, optically isotropic surfactant samples do not appear substantially brighter than their surrounding when viewed through the other sheet. Optically anisotropic materials appear substantially brighter. Optically anisotropic mesophases typically show characteristic textures when viewed through a microscope between crossed polarisers, whereas optically isotropic phases usually show a featureless continuum.

"Newtonian liquids" have a viscosity which remains constant at different shear rates. For the purpose of this specification, liquids are considered Newtonian if the viscosity does not vary substantially at shear rates up to 1000 sec.".

"Lamellar" phases are phases which comprise a plurality of bilayers of surfactant arranged in parallel and separated by liquid medium. They include both solid phases and the typical form of the liquid crystal G-phase. G-phases are typically pourable, non-Newtonian, anisotropic products. They are typically viscous-looking, opalescent materials with a characteristic "smeary" appearance on flowing. They form characteristic texture under the polarising microscope and freeze fractured samples have a lamellar appearance under the electron microscope. X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering similarly reveal a lamellar structure, with a principal peak typically between 4 and 10nm, usually 5 to 6nm. Higher order peaks, when present occur at double or higher integral multiples of the Q value of the principal peak. Q is the momentum transfer vector and is related, in the case of lamellar phases, to the repeat spacing d by the equation  $Q = \frac{2n}{d}$  [pi] where n is the order of the peak.

G-phases, however, can exist in several different forms, including domains of parallel sheets which constitute the bulk of the typical G-phases described above and spherulites formed from a number of concentric spheroidal shells, each of which is a bilayer of surfactant. In this specification the term "lamellar" will be reserved for compositions which are at least partly of the former type. Opaque compositions at least predominantly of the latter type in which the continuous phase is a substantially isotropic solution containing dispersed spherulites are referred to herein as "G-phase compositions". G-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as L<sub>(alpha)</sub> phases.

L<sub>1</sub>-phases are mobile, optically isotropic, and typically Newtonian liquids which show no texture under the polarising microscope. Electron microscopy is capable of resolving the texture of such phases only at very high magnifications, and X-ray or neutron scattering normally gives only a single broad peak typical of a liquid structure, at very small angles close to the reference beam. The viscosity of an L<sub>1</sub>-phase is usually low, but may rise significantly as the concentration approaches the upper phase boundary.

"M-phases" are typically immobile, anisotropic products resembling low melting point waxes. They give characteristic textures under the polarising microscope, and a hexagonal diffraction pattern by X-ray or neutron diffraction which comprises a major peak, usually at values corresponding to a repeat spacing between 4 and 10nm, and sometimes higher order peaks, the first at a Q-value which is 30.3 times the Q-value of the principal peak and the next double the Q-value of the principal peak. M-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as H-phases.

The viscous isotropic or "VI" phases are typically immobile, non-Newtonian, optically isotropic and are typically transparent, at least when pure. VI phases have a cubic symmetrical diffraction pattern, under X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering, with a principal peak and higher order peaks at 2<sup>n/s</sup> and 3<sup>n/s</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak.

These cubic liquid crystalline phases are sometimes observed immediately following the inicellar phase at ambient temperature at the concentration of surfactant is increased. It has been proposed that such VI phases, sometimes referred to as  $I_1$  phase, may arise from the packing of micelles (probably spherical) in a cubic lattice. At ambient temperature a further increase in surfactant concentration usually results in hexagonal phase  $(M_1)$ , which may be followed by a lancilar phase (G).  $I_1$  phases, when they occur, are usually only observed over a narrow range of concentrations, typically just above those at which the  $L_1$ -phase is formed. The location of such VI phases in a phase diagram suggests that the phase is built up of small closed surfactant aggregates in a water continuum.

An inverse form of the  $I_1$  phase the  $I_2$  phase; has also been reported, possibly between the inverse hexagonal  $(M_2)$  and  $L_2$  phases. It consists of a surfactant continuum containing a cubic array of inverted micelies. An alternative form of the VI phase called the  $V_1$  phase has been observed at concentrations between the M and G phases and may comprise a bicontinuous system. This may exhibit an even higher viscosity than the  $I_1$ . An inverse phase, the  $V_2$  phase, between the G and  $M_2$  phases has also been postulated.

VI phases are typically examples of "ringing gels". When a jar or beaker containing such a phase is sharply struck, a distinctive vibration can be felt in the composition.

The  $I_{l}/L_{l}$  transition temperature will be referred to herein as the melting point of the  $I_{l}$  phase for convenience, although it is not strictly speaking the melting point since the VI phases are not solids.

All references herein to the formation or existence of specific phases or structures are to be construed, unless the context requires otherwise, as references to their formation or existence at 20°C.

Hexagonal gels (M-phase) have been referred to in the prior art as cleaning compositions, e.g. GB 2 179 055. EP I 153 837 and colloidal gels formed with gelling agents such as synthetic polymers or gelatin have also been suggested, e.g. US 4 465 663.

However these compositions cannot be readily dissolved in water to form microemulsions. They are moreover usually opaque and of an unattractive appearance and often require the presence of solvents such as glycols which add to the cost and are environmentally undesirable.

The use of a type of ringing gel to suspend oil for cosmetic or pharmaceutical applications was described in US 4 026 313 but the formulation requires the presence of hydroxylic solvents and utilises a surfactant system which is unsuitable for shampoo applications. EP O 598 335 describes the use of various cubic phases including I<sub>1</sub> phases as laundry presporters and for other cleaning formulations. If does not suggest how such phases could be used to suspend oil or form microemulsions. Normally attempts to suspend oil in surfactant mesophases result in coarse droplets of oil being suspended in the aqueous phase of a structured surfactant.

Our invention provides a concentrated personal cleansing composition comprising at least 20% water. 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of a mineral, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (A) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (B) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11, in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (A), said surfactant water and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25°C.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an  $l_1$  phase over a comparatively broad surfactant concentration range e.g. more than  $\pm 5\%$  or greater, which range typically lies above 15% by weight total surfactant based on the weight of the composition e.g. between 20% and 40% by weight surfactant usually between 25% and 60%.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an I<sub>1</sub> phase which melts above 30°C e.g. above 35°C, most preferably above 40°C. Preferably the I<sub>1</sub> phase melts at a temperature substantially below 100°C, e.g. below 90°C, more preferably below 80°C, most preferably below 70°C, especially below 60°C, typically below 55°C, usually below 50°C.

The surfactant mixture preferably has a mean HLB based on the molar proportions of the components between 10 and 15 e.g. 11 to 14. The surfactants preferably comprise non-ionic surfactants such as ethoxylated alcohols. It has been found that highly ethoxylated fatty alcohols, e.g. more than 10 EO groups, preferably more than 15 EO groups, especially 18 to 50 EO groups form I<sub>1</sub> phases particularly readily.

Other non-ionic surfactants which may be present include:-

alkyl phenol ethoxylates, fatty acid ethoxylates, fatty acid monoalkylolamide ethoxylates, fatty alcohol propoxylates, fatty anime alkoxylates and fatty acid glyceryl ester ethoxylates. Other non-ionic compounds suitable for inclusion in compositions of the present invention include mixed ethylene oxide propylene oxide alkoxylates, low relative molecular mass polyethylene glycols e.g. PEG600 and PEG200, ethylene glycol monoesters, amine oxides and alkyl polyglycosides, alkyl sugar esters including alkyl sucrose esters and alkyl oligosaccharide ester, alkyl capped polyvinyl alcohol and alkyl capped polyvinyl pyrrolidone.

Compositions of the invention may also comprise anionic surfactants, in addition to or instead of non-ionic surfactants. Anionic surfactant may comprise a C<sub>10-20</sub> alkyl benzene suiphonate or an alkyl ether suiphate which is preferably the product obtained by ethoxylating a natural fatty or synthetic C<sub>0-22</sub> e.g. a C<sub>12-14</sub> alcohol with from 1 to 20, preferably 2 to 10 e.g. 3 to 4 ethyleneoxy groups, optionally stripping any unreacted alcohol, reacting the ethoxylated product with a sulphating agent and neutralising the resulting alkyl ether sulphuric acid with a base. The term also includes alkyl glyceryl sulphates, and random or block copolymerised alkyl ethoxy/propoxy sulphates.

The anionic surfactant may also comprise, for example,  $C_{10,20}$  e.g.  $C_{12-18}$  alkyl sulphate.

The surfactant may comprise a  $C_{3-20}$  e.g.  $C_{15-20}$  aliphatic soap. The soap may be saturated or unsaturated, straight or branched chain.

Preferred examples include dodecanoates, myristates, stearates, oleates, linoleates, linoleates and palmitates and coconut and tallow soaps.

The surfactant may include other anionic surfactants, such as olefin sulphonates, paraffin sulphonates, taurides, isethionates, ether sulphonates, ether carboxylates, aliphatic ester sulphonates e.g. alkyl glyceryl sulphonates, sulphosuccinates or sulphosuccinamates.

The cation of any anionic surfactant is typically sodium but may alternatively be potassium, lithium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, or an alkyl ammonium having up to 6 aliphatic carbon atoms including isopropyl ammonium, monoethanol ammonium, diethanol ammonium, and triethanol ammonium.

Ammonium and ethanol ammonium salts are generally more soluble than the sodium salts. Mixtures of the above cations may be used.

The composition may contain amphoteric surfactants such as betaines sulphobetaines, amido betaines or imidazoline betaines.

The I<sub>1</sub> phase may be conveniently prepared by mixing the oil and oil soluble surfactant and adding sufficient water to the water soluble surfactant to maintain a lamellar phase. The oil and oil soluble surfactant may be stirred into the lamellar composition at elevated temperature, above the melting point of the desired I<sub>1</sub> phase. The composition is then diluted with hot water until a microemulsion is formed and then cooled to solidify it into the I<sub>1</sub> phase.

The oil is preferably a mineral oil (e.g. a low molecular weight petroleum ether) or a fatty glyceride, a terpene oil such as limonene or a silicone oil. Mixtures of oils may be used. Particularly preferred are vegetable oils such as coconut, evening primrose, groundnut, meadow foam, apricot kernel, peach kernel, avocado, jojoba and olive oil. Oil soluble cosmetic or topical pharmaceutical ingredients may be dissolve in the oil including antiseptics, styptics, antidandruff agents such as zinc omadine (zinc pyrithione) and selenium disulphide, proteins, emollients such as lanolin, isopropyl myristate, glyceryl isostearate or propylene glycol distearate, dyes, perfumes and waxes. Water insoluble particulate solids including exfoliants such as taic, clays, polymer beads, sawdust, silica, seeds, ground nutshells and dicalcium phosphate, pearlisers such as mica or glycerol or ethylene glycol mono- or di-stearate, glitter additives and sunscreens such as titanium dioxide may be dispersed in the hot microemulsion prior to cooling. Porous particles (so called micro-sponges) containing absorbed active ingredients or gelatin or other microcapsules may be suspended. Other active ingredients which may be suspended include insect repellants and topical pharmaceutical preparations, e.g. preparations for treatment of acne, fungicides for athlete's foot or ringworm or antiseptics or antihistamines. Pigments, such as the iron oxides, may also be added.

Electrolytes tend to break I; phase structure and are preferably present in concentrations below 10% based on total weight of the compositions, more preferably below 5%, e.g. 0 to 3%, most preferably 0 to 1%. Generally we prefer that electrolyte be substantially absent. Adventitious chloride or sulphate present as impurities in the surfactant can be tolerated. Small amounts of builder such as citrates, pyrophosphates, polyphosphates may optionally be included.

Water soluble solvents are generally undesirable and are not required to form stable I; structures according to the invention. We therefore prefer that they should be substantially absent. Although small amounts of, for example, ethanol or propanol may sometimes be desired for special purposes, they are preferably present in amounts less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 3% by weight, most preferably less than 2% by weight, e.g. less than 1% by weight.

The composition may optionally contain hydrotropes such as sodium lower alkyl benzene sulphonate e.g. sodium toluene, xylene or cumene sulphonate or urea, however these are not generally necessary and are not generally preferred. We prefer that these should be present in quantities less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 4%, especially less than 2% e.g. 0 to 1%. They may be useful occasionally to avoid haziness of the gel.

The total amount of water is preferably from 25 to 60% by weight of the composition, more preferably 30 to 50%, e.g. 35 to 50%. The total weight percentage of surfactant based on the weight of the composition is preferably from 15 to 35%, e.g. 20 to 30%. The proportion of oil is preferably greater than 5%, more preferably greater than 8%, e.g. 10 to 30%, especially 15 to 25% by weight based on the weight of the composition. The oil soluble surfactant is preferably present in a proportion of more than 1.5 based on the weight of oil, more preferably from 1:2 to 5:1. The oil soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB of from 3 to 9 e.g. 4 to 8.

The weight ratio of water soluble surfactant to oil soluble surfactant is preferably 1:1 to 30:1, more preferably 2:1 to 20:1, typically 3:1 to 15:1, e.g. 4:1 to 10:1. The water soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB greater than 12, more preferably greater than 13, especially 14 to 19.

The product may be east into shaped bodies or formed into particles or granules, e.g. by spray cooling a hot solution of the  $L_1$  phase formed on melting the composition.

The composition may be converted into a microemulsion phase by addition of water, by heating above the melting point or by adding electrolyte such as salt and the invention includes  $L_1$  phases when so prepared.

The invention will be illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | w/w (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 20         | 20      |
| "EMPICOL"® 0251/70J (70%)               | 11.2       | 16      |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | 4.8        | 16      |
| "GLUCAPON" \$ 215 CS UP (55%)           | , ó .      | 9.2     |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 7.5        | 7.5     |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100%)                  | 2          | 2       |
| PERFUME (190%)                          | 0.5        | 0.5     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| BENZOIC ACID (100%)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (47%)                  | 0.1        | 0.2     |
| WATER                                   | •••        | Balance |

The method of mixing comprised the following steps:-

- 1. Charge 50% of water
- 2. Heat to 60°C
- 3. Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and 47% NaOH dissolve with stirring
- 4. Add "EMPIGEN" BB
- 5. Add mineral oil and disperse with sturring
- 6. Add "EMPILAN" KB 2 and mix thoroughly
- 7. Add "EMPICOL" 0251/70j
- 8 Add remaining water
- 9 Add "GLUCAPON" 215 CS UP
- 10. Add further KB 2 until clear
- 1i. Cool
- 12. Add evaporated water
- 13. Adjust pH

#### Physical Data

| pH (10%)   | : 5.5 = 0.1       | Density @ 20°C      | $: 1.0 \pm 0.1 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ |
|------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Solids (%) | : ~ 53% (typical) | Appearance          | : Clear or Hazy Gel               |
| Odour      | · Characteristic  | Set Point (typical) | : 30℃                             |

Viscosity @ 20°C : N/A

The product was examined by x-ray diffraction and exhibited peaks at 13.145nm (intense and sharp), 7.943nm (ill defined) and 6.355nm (small), indicating cubic symmetry, and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution or heating. The latter gave good even distribution of oil applied to skin.

Example 2

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | w/w (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 15         | 15      |
| "EMPICOL" © CDL30J/35 (22%)             | 8          | 35.4    |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | 8          | 26.7    |
| "EMPICOL"® 0785 (40%)                   | 2          | 5       |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN" & KB6 (100%)                  | б          | 6       |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.5        | 0.5     |
| PERFUME (100%)                          | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| "KATHON"®                               |            | 0.2     |
| ' WATER                                 |            | Balance |
| TOTAL                                   | 45.8       | 100     |

|            |                    | Physical Data |                        |
|------------|--------------------|---------------|------------------------|
| Appearance | : Clear Liquid Gel | Odour         | : Characteristic Odour |
| Solids     | : 36.5% (typical)  | pH (100%)     | : 5.5 - 6.5 (typical   |
| Odour      | Characteristic     | Set Point     | : 20 ± 5°C             |

Viscosity (Carrimed Rheometer @ 20°C : N/A

The product had small angle x-ray diffraction peaks characteristic of cubic symmetry and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution with water or warming. The latter gave good even deposition of oil on skin.

Examples 3 and 4

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form ringing gels:

| Component                  | 1          |                                       | 2           |         |  |
|----------------------------|------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|---------|--|
| Component                  | Solids (%) | w/w (%)                               | Solids (%)  | w/w (%) |  |
| "EMPIGEN"® CDL30J/35 (22%) | 8          | 36.4                                  | : 8         | 36.4    |  |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)        |            | 26.7                                  | 8           | 26.7    |  |
| "EMPICOL" & LB40 (40%)     | -1         | 7.5                                   | 3           | 7.5     |  |
| "EMPICOL" & CVH (90%)      | <u>.</u>   | 4                                     | :           | •••     |  |
| "EMPILAN" & KB2 (100%)     | 5.5        | 5.5                                   | 6           | 6       |  |
| TRIETHANOLAMINE (100%)     | 1.1        | 1.1                                   |             |         |  |
| CITRIC ACID                | 1          | 0.75                                  | 0.75        | 0.75    |  |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE           | i<br>      |                                       |             |         |  |
| TETRACETIC ACID            | 0.05       | 0.05                                  | 0.05        | 0.05    |  |
| "KATHON"® CG (100%)        | 0.05       | 0.05                                  | 0.05        | 0.05    |  |
| LIGHT MINERAL (100%)       | 14         | 14                                    | 20          | 20      |  |
| WATER                      |            | Balance                               |             | Balance |  |
| TOTAL                      | 45.7       | 100                                   | 46.1        | 100     |  |
| Appearance                 | Clear Gel  | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | : Clear Gel | ·       |  |

The products in each case exhibited cubic symmetry and formed clear microemulsions or dilution with water or heating. The registered trade marks noted above have the following significance:-

- "EMPICOL" CVH is a Ce alkyl ether carboxylic acid
- "EMPICOL" LB40 is a C<sub>3</sub> C<sub>10</sub> alkyl sulphate
- "EMPICOL" 0251/70J is a Citata alkyl 3 mole ethoxy sulphate
- "EMPICOL" 9758 is a C<sub>10</sub> alkyl suiphate
- "EMPIGEN" BB is a Cityla alkyl betaine
- "EMPIGEN" CDL is coconut ampho acetate
- "EMPILAN" KB2 is a C12-14 alkyl 2 mole athoxylate
- "EMPILAN" KB6 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 6 mole ethoxylate
- "GLUCAPON" 215CS is a C8-10 alkyl polyclucoside D.P. 1.5
- "KATHON" CG is a proprietary biocide

# Exhibit 2

OFFICE OF GENERAL COUNSEL

ONE JOHNSON & JOHNSON PLAZA
---NEW BRUNSWICK, N.J. 08933-7002-----

8 June 2000

URGENT

VIA FACSIMILE 9-011-121-420-5437

Mr. Roger Savidge Albright & Wilson Surfactants, Europe 201-222 Hagley Road Oldbury West Midlands B68 ONN England

Re:

PCT Patent Application Based upon UK provisional Patent Application No. 9913408.2 filed 10 June 1999 For Ringing Gel Technology

Dear Roger:

As we discussed this morning, please file a Request for the above referenced application on 9 June 2000 and designate all member countries. If necessary, you may file the attached Appointment with the Request. After this application is filed, we can then select a mutually acceptable independent counsel for prosecuting this application.

We agree that the PCT application should be filed in the names of Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited trading as Albright & Wilson Surfactants Europe and <u>Johnson & Johnson Consumer Companies</u>, <u>Inc.</u>, having an address at <u>Grandview Road</u>, <u>Skillman</u>, <u>New Jersey 08558 USA</u>. It is our understanding that the following individuals shall be included as inventors to this application:

- Elvin Lukenbach
   Klinesville Road
   Flemington, New Jersey 08822
   USA
   United States Citizen
- Laura McCulloch
   Hampton Court
   Basking Ridge, New Jersey
   USA
   United Kingdom Citizen
- Benjamin Wiegand
   Farmview Drive
   Newton, Pennsylvania 18940
   USA
   United States Citizen

In view of the fact that I will be away from the office on the 9<sup>th</sup>, please contact my assistant, Emilie Liberatore at 732 524-2820 should you need further assistance. Thank you so much for your assistance in this matter.

Michele G. Mangin

## APPOINTMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE FOR INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

PRIORITY APPLICATION NUMBER:

GB 9913408.2

PRIORTY DATE CLAIMED: 10 June 1999

TITLE OF INVENTION: PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

APPLICANTS: JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES, INC. AND RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TRADING AS ALBRIGHT & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE

The undersigned applicant hereby appoints

Mr. Roger Savidge
of Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited
trading as Albright & Wilson Surfactants Europe
201-222 Hagley Road
Oldbury West Midlands B68 ONN
England

To act on their behalf before the competent International Authorities in connection with this international application and to receive payments on their behalf.

New Brunswick, NJ USA
New Brunswick, NJ USA

8 June 2000

Johnson & Johnson Consuper Companies, Inc

<del>By: Michele Galka Mangini</del>

**Assistant Secretary** 

**RECEIVED** 

APR 1 7 2002

OFFICE OF PETITIONS

# Exhibit 3

## **PCT**

### **REQUEST**

| International Application No.                                |
|--|
|  |
|  |
| International Filing Date                                    |
|  |
| Name of receiving Office and "PCT International Application" |

The undersigned requests that the present international application be processed according to the Patent Cooperation Treaty. Applicant's or agent's file reference MPD315/PCT/RGMS (if desired) (12 characters maximum) TITLE OF INVENTION Box No. 1 PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS APPLICANT Box No. II Name and address: (Family name followed by given name: for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in his Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State This person is also inventor. of residence is indicated below.) Telephone No. RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TRADING AS ALBRIGHT +44 121 420 5430 & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JOHNSON Facsimile No. CONSUMER COMPANIES INC +44 121 420 5437 210-222 HALGEY ROAD WEST OLDBURY, WEST MIDLANDS, B68 ONN Teleprinter No. GREAT BRITAIN 336291 ALBRIW G State (that is, country) of residence: State (that is, country) of nationality: GB GB the States indicated in the Supplemental Box the United States of America only all designated States except all designated States This person is applicant the United States of America for the purposes of: FURTHER APPLICANT(S) AND/OR (FURTHER) INVENTOR(S) Box No. III Name and address: tFamily name followed by given name: for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below: This person is: applicant only of residence is indicated below.) **HATCHMAN** Kevan applicant and inventor 5 Byland Close inventor only (If this check-hox Friarscroft is marked, do not fill in below.) Bromsgrove GREAT BRITAIN B61 7PL Worcestershire, State (that is, country) of residence: State that is, country) of nationality: GB GB the States indicated in the Supplemental Box the United States of America only all designated States all designated States except the United States of America X This person is applicant for the purposes of: Further applicants and or (further) inventors are indicated on a continuation sheet. AGENT OR COMMON REPRESENTATIVE; OR ADDRESS FOR CORRESPONDENCE Box No. IV The person identified below is hereby has been appointed to act on behalf common representative agent of the applicant(s) before the competent International Authorities as: Telephone No. Name and address: (Family name followed by given name: for a legal entity, full official designation. The address must include postal code and name of country.) +44 121 420 543**0** Roger Gordon Madgwick SAVIDGE Facsimile No. Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited +44 121 420 5437 210-222 Hagley Road West Oldbury, West Midlands Teleprinter No. B68 0NN 336291 ALBRIW G GREAT BRITAIN Address for correspondence: Mark this check-box where no agent or common representative is has been appointed and the

|             |     | $\sim$    |      |        |      |
|-------------|-----|-----------|------|--------|------|
| <b>N</b> '0 |     | _         |      |        |      |
| ٠١٥.        |     | <u></u> . |      |        |      |
|             | No. | No        | No 2 | No 2 . | No 2 |

| Continuation of Box No. III FURTHER APPLICANT(S) AND/OR (FURTHER) INVENTOR(S)   |   |   |  |  |
|---|---|---|--|--|
| If none of the following sub-boxes is used, this sheet should not be included in the request.   |   |   |  |  |
| Name and address: (Family name followed by given name: for a le designation. The address must include postal code and name of count address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence is indicated below.)  LUKENBACH Elvin  160 Kinesville Road Flemington, New Jersey 08822 UNITED STATES OF AMERICA | gal entity, full official<br>ity: The country of the<br>of residence if no State      | This person is:  applicant only  X applicant and inventor  inventor only (If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.) |  |  |
| State (that is, country) of nationality:  | State (that is, country) of   | residence:<br>US  |  |  |
| This person is applicant all designated for the purposes of:  |   | United States America only the States indicated in the Supplemental Box   |  |  |
| Name and address: (Family name followed by given name; for a led designation. The address must include postal code and name of coun address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence is indicated below.)  MCCULLOCH Laura  18 Hampton Court  Basking Ridge, New Jersey UNITED STATES OF AMERICA      | egal entity, full official<br>try. The country of the<br>of residence if no State     | This person is:  applicant only  applicant and inventor  inventor only (If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.)   |  |  |
| State (that is, country) of nationality:  GB  | State (that is, country) of   | residence:<br>US  |  |  |
| This person is applicant all designated for the purposes of:  |   | United States the States indicated in America only the Supplemental Box   |  |  |
| Name and address: (Family name followed by given name; for a lidesignation. The address must include postal code and name of counaddress indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence is indicated below.)  WIEGAND Benjamin 2028 Farmview Drive Newton, Pennsylvania 18940 UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.     | egal entips, full official<br>nry. The country of the<br>of residence if no State     | This person is:  applicant only  X applicant and inventor  inventor only (If this check-box is marked, do not fill in below.) |  |  |
| State tihat is, country) of nationality:  US  | State (that is, country) o  | f residence:<br>US  |  |  |
| This person is applicant all designated all designated  |   | the United States f America only the Supplemental Box   |  |  |
| Name and address: (Family name followed by given name: for a designation. The address must include postal code and name of cou address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country of residence is indicated below.)   | legal entity, full official<br>nurs. The country of the<br>) of residence if no State | This person is:  applicant only  applicant and inventor  inventor only (If this check-hox is marked, do not fill in below.)   |  |  |
| State (that is, country) of nationality:  | State (that is, country) of   | residence:  |  |  |
| This person is applicant for the purposes of:  all designated the United States all designated the United States  |   | he United States If America only Ithe States indicated in the Supplemental Box  |  |  |
| Further applicants and or (further) inventors are indicated   | on another continuation s   | heet.   |  |  |

|               |  | Y DESIGNATION OF STATES  |                        |        |  |
|---------------|--|--|------------------------|--------|--|
| Box .         |  |  |                        |        | dicable check s: at least one must be marked):   |
|               |  | owing designations are he: made under Rule 4.9(a) in   | nark :                 | ne ap; | micanie checks. Si al least one musi ce markeu).   |
| Regio         | na   | l Patent   |                        |        | MONE Malauri CD Cudes CI Ciarra I anno C7 Cumpiland  |
|               | AP ARIPO Patent: GH Ghana, GM Gambia, KE Kenya, LS Lesotho, MW Malawi, SD Sudan, SL Sierra Leone, SZ Swaziland, TZ United Republic of Tanzania, UG Uganda, ZW Zimbabwe, and any other State which is a Contracting State of the Harare Protocol and of the PCT   |  |                        |        |  |
|               |  | RURussian Federation, IJ Tajikistan, IM Turkmenistan   | ı, and                 | any o  | S Kyrgyzstan, KZ Kazakhstan, MD Republic of Moldova, ther State which is a Contracting State of the Eurasian Patent  |
|               |  | European Patent: AT Austria, BE Belgium, CH a DK Denmark, ES Spain, FI Finland, FR France, GB L MC Monaco, NL Netherlands, PT Portugal, SE Sweden, Convention and of the PCT | and a                  | any ot | vitzerland and Liechtenstein, CY Cyprus, DE Germany, gdom, GR Greece, IE Ireland, IT Italy, LU Luxembourg, her State which is a C ntracting State of the European Patent |
| <b>⊠</b> 0    | A  | OAPI Patent: BF Burkina Faso, BJ Benin, CF Central GA Gabon, GN Guinea, GW Guinea-Bissau, ML Mali, other State which is a member State of OAPI and a Contral Gabon.          |                        |        | Republic, CG Congo, CI Côte d'Ivoire, CM Cameroon, itania, NE Niger, SN Senegal, TD Chad, TG Togo, and any of the PCT (if other kind of protection or treatment desired. |
|               |  | specify on dotted line)  |                        |        | •  |
|               |  | I Patent (if other kind of protection or treatment desired, spe  |                        |        |  |
|               |  | United Arab Emirates   | Ø                      | LR     | Liberia  |
|               |  | Albania  | 区                      | LS     | Lesotho  |
|               |  | Armenia  | -                      | -      | Lithuania  |
|               |  | Austria  | 区                      | LU     | Luxembourg   |
| X A           | U  | Australia  |                        |        | Lania  |
| $\boxtimes A$ | Z  | Azerbaijan   |                        |        | Morocco  |
| ⊠ B           | ß.A  | Bosnia and Herzegovina   |                        |        | Republic of Moldova  |
| ⊠ E           | В  | Barbados   | Ø                      | MG.    | Madagascar   |
| 区 E           | 3G   | Bulgaria   | X)                     | MK     | The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia  |
|               |  | Brazil   |                        |        |  |
|               |  | Belarus  | X                      | MN     | Mongolia   |
| _             |  | Canada   | ĬΫ                     | MNY    | Malawi   |
| _             |  | and LI Switzerland and Liechtenstein   |                        |        | Mexico   |
| _             |  | China  |                        |        | Norway   |
|               |  | Costa Rica   |                        | NZ     | New Zealand  |
|               |  | Cuba   |                        | PL     | Poland   |
|               |  | Czech Republic   |                        | PT     | Portugal   |
|               |  | Germany  |                        |        |  |
|               |  | Denmark  | =                      | RO     | Romania Russian Federation   |
|               |  |  |                        | RU     |  |
|               |  | Dominica   | =                      | SD     | Sudan  |
| _             |  | Estonia  |                        | SE     | Sweden   |
| N E           |  | Spain  |                        | SG     | Singapore  |
| N E           | -  | Finland  |                        | SI     | Slovenia   |
|               |  | United Kingdom   | X                      | SK     | Slovakia   |
|               |  | Grenada  | X                      | SL     | Sierra Leone   |
|               |  | Georgia  |                        | TJ     | Tajikistan   |
| $\square$     | ЗH   | Ghana  | X                      | TM     | Turkmenistan   |
| 図(            | 3.N  | Gambia   | 図                      | TR     | Turkey   |
| DB 1          | ΗR   | Croatia  | $\boxtimes$            | TT     | Trinidad and Tobago  |
| ⊠ I           | ΗU   | Hungary  | X                      | TZ     | United Republic of Tanzania  |
| ⊠ i           | D  | Indonesia  | $\boxtimes$            | UA     | Ukraine  |
| 1 🖾 I         | L  | Israel   | $\boxtimes$            | ľG     | Uganda   |
| <b>図</b> 1    | N  | India  | 区                      | L'S    | United States of America   |
| <b>☑</b> i    | s  | lceland  |                        |        |  |
| ⊠ J           | ΙP   | Japan  | X                      | UZ     | Uzbekistan   |
|               |  | Kenya  | $\overline{\boxtimes}$ | VN     | Viet Nam   |
| ŧ .           |  | Kyrgyzstan   | _                      | YU     | Yugoslavia   |
| I             |  | Democratic People's Republic of Korea  | _                      | ZA     | South Africa   |
| بدعا          |  | Democratic recipie's Republic of Rosca   |                        |        | Zimbabwe   |
| (Z) +         | - D  |  | <u> </u>               | eck-   | hoves reserved for designating States which have   |
|               |  | Republic of Korea  | be                     | come   | boxes reserved for designating States which have party to the PCT after issuance of this sheet:  |
|               |  | Kazakhstan   | $\square$              | Ι. Δι  | GANTIGUA. & BARBUDA  |
| -             |  | Saint Lucia  |                        | ח      | ZALGERIA   |
|               |  | Sri Lanka  |                        |        |  |
| desid         | Precautionary Designation Statement: In addition to the designations made above, the applicant also makes under Rule 4.9(b) all other designations which would be permitted under the PCT except any designation(s) indicated in the Supplemental Box as being excluded from the scope of this statement. The applicant declares that those additional designations are subject to confirmation and that any |  |                        |        |  |

Supplemental Box

If the Supply sental Box is not used, this sheet should not be inclusive in the request.

- 1: If in any of the Boxes, the space is insufficient to furnish all the information: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No...."

  [ cate the number of the Box] and furnish the information in the same manner as required according to the captions of the Box in which the space was insufficient, in particular:
  - if more than two persons are involved as applicants and/or inventors and no "continuation sheet" is available: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. III" and indicate for each additional person the same type of information as required in Box No. III. The country of the address indicated in this Box is the applicant's State (that is, country) of residence if no State of residence is indicated below:
- if, in Box No. II or in any of the sub-boxes of Box No. III, the indication "the States indicated in the Supplemental Box" is checked: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. II" or "Continuation of Box No. III" or "Continuation of Boxes No. II and No. III" (as the case may be), indicate the name of the applicant(s) involved and, next to (each) such name, the State(s) (and/or, where applicable, ARIPO, Eurasian, European or OAPI patent) for the purposes of which the named person is applicant:
- if. in Box No. II or in any of the sub-boxes of Box No. III, the inventor or the inventor/applicant is not inventor for the purposes of all designated States or for the purposes of the United States of America: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. II" or "Continuation of Box No. III" or "Continuation of Boxes No. II and No. III" (as the case may be), indicate the name of the inventor(s) and, next to (each) such name, the State(s) (and or, where applicable, ARIPO, Eurasian, European or OAPI patent) for the purposes of which the named person is inventor;
- if, in addition to the agent(s) indicated in Box No. IV, there are further agents: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. IV" and indicate for each further agent the same type of information as required in Box No. IV:
- (v) if, in Box No. V, the name of any State (or OAPI) is accompanied by the indication "patent of addition," or "certificate of addition," or if, in Box No. V, the name of the United States of America is accompanied by an indication "continuation" or "continuation-in-part": in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. V" and the name of each State involved (or OAPI), and after the name of each such State (or OAPI), the number of the parent title or parent application and the date of grant of the parent title or filing of the parent application;
- (vi) if. in Box No. VI. there are more than three earlier applications whose priority is claimed: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. VI" and indicate for each additional earlier application the same type of information as required in Box No. VI;
- (vii) if, in Box No. VI, the earlier application is an ARIPO application: in such case, write "Continuation of Box No. VI", specify the number of the item corresponding to that earlier application and indicate at least one country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property for which that earlier application was filed.
- 2. If, with regard to the precautionary designation statement contained in Box No. V, the applicant wishes to exclude any State(s) from the scope of that statement: in such case, write "Designation(s) excluded from precautionary designation statement" and indicate the name or two-letter code of each State so excluded.
- 3. If the applicant claims, in respect of any designated Office, the benefits of provisions of the national law concerning non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty: in such case, write "Statement concerning non-prejudicial disclosures or exceptions to lack of novelty" and furnish that statement below.

والمناف والمناف والمستقل والمنافية والمنافية والمنافية والمنافقة و

### CONTINUATION OF BOX NO. V

Designations (continued)

x MZ MOZAMBIQUE

Sheet No. . . 5 . . . .

| Box No. VI PRIORITY CLAIM Further priority claims are indicated in the Supplemental  |  |   |  |  | in the Supplemental Box.                       |  |
|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|
| Filing date  |  | Number  | Where earlier application is:                      |  |  |  |
|  |  | ier application                                     | national application:<br>country                   | regional application:* regional Office | international application:<br>receiving Office |  |
| item (1)<br>10 JUNE 1999   | 9913   | 308.2   | GB   | • .                                    |  |  |
| item (2)   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| item (3)   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| The receiving Office is requested to prepare and transmit to the International Bureau a certified copy of the earlier application(s) (only if the earlier application was filed with the Office which for the purposes of the present international application is the receiving Office) identified above as item(s):  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| * Where the earlier application is an ARIPO application, it is mandatory to indicate in the Supplemental Box at least one country party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property for which that earlier application was filed (Rule 4.10(b)(ii)). See Supplemental Box.   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| Box No. VII INTERNATIONAL SEARCHING AUTHORITY  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| Choice of International Searching Authority (ISA) (if two or more International Searching Authorities are competent to carry out the international search, indicate the Authority chosen; the two-letter code may be used):  Request to use results of earlier search; reference to that search (if an earlier search has been carried out by or requested from the International Searching Authority):  Date (day/month/year)  Number  Country (or regional Office) |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| ISA / EP   |  |   |  | ···                                    |  |  |
| Box No. VIII CHECK LIST; LANGUAGE OF FILING  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| This international application contains the following number of sheets:  1. This international application is accompanied by the item(s) marked below:   |  |   |  |  | ked below:                                     |  |
| request :  | 5 Congrete signed power of attorney TO FOLLOW  |   |  |  |  |  |
| description (excluding sequence listing part)  | 25 3. (X) copy of general power of attorney; reference number, if any: & copy of General Power of Signatory. 4.   statement explaining lack of signature |   |  |  |  |  |
| claims :   | 1  | 4. Stateme  | neral Power Q1. 51<br>intexplaining lack of signat | ure .                                  |  |  |
| abstract :   | 1  | 5. priority   | document(s) identified in I                        | Box No. VI as item(s):                 | TO FOLLOW                                      |  |
| drawings :   |  |   | ion of international applica                       |  |  |  |
| sequence listing part of description :   |  |   |  |  | or other biological material                   |  |
|  |  | ı —   | ide and/or amino acid sequ                         |  |  |  |
| 201111111110111011   | 32   | 9. 🔀 other (s                                       |  | Name Certifica                         | te   |  |
| Figure of the drawings which should accompany the abstract   | i j  | Language of filing of the nternational application: | mational application:                              |  |  |  |
| Box No. IX SIGNATURE OF APPLICANT OR AGENT  Next to each signature, indicate the name of the person signing and the capacity in which the person signs (if such capacity is not obvious from reading the request).  for and on behalf of Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited trading as Albright & Wilson Surfactants Europe and Johnson & Johnson Consumer Comapnies Inc  ROGER GORDON MADGWICK SAVIDGE - By Power of Attorney                                      |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| For receiving Office use only  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| 1. Date of actual receipt of the purported international application:  2. Drawings:  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| 3. Corrected date of actual receipt due to later but timely received papers or drawings completing the purported international application:  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| 4. Date of timely receipt of the required not received: corrections under PCT Article 11(2):   |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| 5. International Searching Authority (if two or more are competent):  6. Transmittal of search copy delayed until search fee is paid.  |  |   |  |  |  |  |
| Date of receipt of the record copy by the International Bureau use only by the International Bureau:   |  |   |  |  |  |  |

| PCT   | For receiving Office use only   |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|--|--|
|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| FEE CALCULATION SHEET   | International application No. 🕳 .                                       |  |  |  |  |  |
| Annex to the Request  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Applicant's or agent's file reference MPD315/PCT/RGMS   | Date stamp of the receiving Office                                      |  |  |  |  |  |
| Applicant   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TRADING SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JOHNSON CO   | ONSUMER COMPANIES INC   |  |  |  |  |  |
| CALCULATION OF PRESCRIBED FEES  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1. TRANSMITTAL FEE  | DEM 199.49 T  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2. SEARCH FEE   | DEM 1848.26 S   |  |  |  |  |  |
| International search to be carried out by   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| (If two or more International Searching Authorities are competent in relation application, indicate the name of the Authority which is chosen to carry out the in   | n to the international search.)   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. INTERNATIONAL FEE  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Basic Fee   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| The international application contains 32 sheets.   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| first 30 sheets DEM 806.  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2 x 19.95 = DEM 39.90 b2  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| IDEM 846.41 R   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Add amounts entered at b1 and b2 and enter total at B   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Designation Fees ALL STATES DESIGNATED  The international application contains designations.  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8 × DFM 148.64 = DEM 1189.12 D  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| number of designation fees amount of designation fee payable (maximum 10)   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Add amounts entered at B and D and enter total at I DEM 2035.53 I   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| , tod amounts entered at B and B and B and total at 1   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| (Applicants from certain States are entitled to a reduction of 75% of the international fee. Where the applicant is (or all applicants are) so entitled, the total to be entered at I is 25% of the sum of the amounts entered at B and D.) |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. FEE FOR PRIORITY DOCUMENT (if applicable)  | P P   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5. TOTAL FEES PAYABLE   | DEM 4083.28   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Add amounts entered at T. S, I and P, and enter total in the TOTAL I  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| The designation fees are not paid at this time.   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| MODE OF PAYMENT   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| authorization to charge deposit account (see below) bank draft  | coupons   |  |  |  |  |  |
| cheque  | other (specify):  |  |  |  |  |  |
| postal money order revenue stamps   |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| DEPOSIT ACCOUNT AUTHORIZATION (this mode of payment may not be available at all receiving Offices)  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| The RO EP X is hereby authorized to charge the total fees indicated above to my deposit account.  |   |  |  |  |  |  |
| (this check-box may be marked only if the   | conditions for deposit accounts of the receiving Office so permit) is   |  |  |  |  |  |
| hereby authorized to charge any deficiency deposit account.   | or credit any overpayment in the total fees indicated above to my       |  |  |  |  |  |
| •   | eparation and transmittal of the priority document to the International |  |  |  |  |  |
| 28 05 00 09 9 JUNE 2000   | (GA235)   |  |  |  |  |  |
| Deposit Account No. Date (day month year)   | Signature Rogery Gordon Madgwick SAVIDGE                                |  |  |  |  |  |

## APPOINTMENT OF REPRESENTATIVE FOR INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION

PRIORITY APPLICATION NUMBER:

GB 9913408.2

PRIORTY DATE CLAIMED: 10 June 1999

TITLE OF INVENTION: PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

APPLICANTS: JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES, INC. AND RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TRADING AS ALBRIGHT & WILSON

SURFACTANTS EUROPE

The undersigned applicant hereby appoints

Mr. Roger Savidge of Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited trading as Albright & Wilson Surfactants Europe 201-222 Hagley Road Oldbury West Midlands B68 ONN **England** 

To act on their behalf before the competent International Authorities in connection with this international application and to receive payments on their behalf.

By: Michele Galka Mangini

Assistant Secretary

BY THIS POWER OF ATTORNEY given this 20 day of APRIL two thousand, RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED, a Company duly incorporated in England and having its Registered Office at 21Q-222 Hagley Road West, Oldbury, West Midlands (hereinafter called "the Company") hereby appoints ROGER GORDON MADGWICK SAVIDGE (hereinafter called "the Attorney") to be the true and lawful Agent and Attorney of the Company on behalf of and in the name of the Company or otherwise to do, perform, exercise and execute or concur with any other person or persons in doing, performing, exercising and executing in any country or countries or jurisdiction in any part of the world all or any other the following powers, acts, deeds and things, that is to say:-

- To make application or to cause application to be made for the grant to the Company of any letters patents, trade mark, trade name or design and the proper registration thereof and to take all steps necessary for the same to be prosecuted and maintained;
- 2. As the act and deed of the Company to sign, seal, deliver and execute all or any assignments or assurances to the Company of any letters patent, registered trade mark, trade name or registered design or any application therefore for the purpose of fully and effectually vesting and transferring the same into the name of the Company;
- As the act and deed of the Company to sign, seal, deliver and execute all or any assignments, assurances, licences or sub-licences from the Company of or under any letters patent, registered trade mark, trade name or registered design or any application therefor for the purpose of fully and effectually vesting, transferring or granting the same into the name of a company (whether in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) which is a subsidiary or holding company of the Company insofar as such documents can be executed without the Company's Seal being affixed thereto;

F:docle.jtw.04050003

- 4. To sign and execute all documents relating to applications for letters patent, registered trade marks, trade names or registered design or the renewal thereof or to assignments or assurances of letters patent or applications therefor;
- 5. To act in regard to all official communications which may now or hereafter be addressed to the Attorney relating to applications for letters patents, registered trade marks, trade names or registered designs or the renewal thereof in such manner that the Attorney may be recognised as the authorised Agent of the Company in all proceedings incident thereto;
- 6. For or in connection with any letters patent, registered trade mark, trade name or registered design or application therefor to sign, seal, deliver and execute any Power or Attorney or other deed or document;
  - a) authorising any firm of patent agents or trade mark agents in the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland to act on behalf of the Company;
  - b) authorising any person, persons, firm or company practising as patent agents or trade mark agents or otherwise entitled to act as agents for all matters relating to trade marks or trade names outside the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland to act on behalf of the Company;
- 7. To initiate or cause to be initiated in any Patent Office or Registry or any Trade Mark Registry or other official agency or government department or otherwise responsible for the registration or protection of trade marks, trade names or designs any proceedings or application whatsoever relating to any proprietary rights whether in the name of the Company or not and to cause such proceedings or application to be maintained or withdrawn;

AND THE COMPANY HEREBY RATIFIED AND CONFIRMS and agrees to ratify and confirm all and whatsoever the Attorney shall lawfully do or have done by virtue of the authorities herein contained.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF the Company has executed this document as a deed the day and year first above written.

Executed by RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED as a deed and

:.

signed by:

Director

Secretary

# PCT

# GENERAL POWER OF ATTORNEY

(for several international applications filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty)

(PCT Rule 90.5)

| •   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| The undersigned person(s):  (Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official de                         | signation. The address must include                   | e postal code and name of country.)                                |
| ALBRIGHT & WILSON UK LIMITED P O BOX 3  |   |  |
| 210-222 HAGLEY ROAD WEST<br>OLDBURY   |   | •  |
| WARLEY<br>WEST MIDLANDS B68 ONN   |   | •  |
| ENGLAND   |   |  |
| hereby appoint(s) the following person(as:  | X agent   | common representative  |
| Name and address<br>(Family name followed by given name; for a legal entity, full official de                                 | esignation. The address must includ                   | e postal code and name of country.)                                |
| 1. SAVIDGE, Roger Gordon Madg   | vick  |  |
| 2. KINTON, Colin David  |   |  |
| both of ALBRIGHT & WILSON UK LIMITED  |   |  |
| PATENTS DEPARTMENT  |   |  |
| P O BOX 3<br>210-222 HAGLEY ROAD WEST, OLDER  | JRY, WARLEY, WEST                                     | MIDLANDS B68 ONN, ENGLAND  |
| to represent the undersigned before   | •   | t International Authorities  |
|   | the International                                     | Searching Authority only   |
|   | the International                                     | Preliminary Examining Authority only                               |
| in connection with any and all international application  | ons filed by the undersigned                          | d with the following Office  |
| EUROPEAN PATENT OFFICE  |   | as receiving Office  |
| and to make or receive payments on behalf of the unc  | lersigned.  |  |
| Signature(s) (wherethere are several persons, each of them must si<br>signs, if such copacity is not obvious from reading thi | gn; next to each signature, indicate to<br>te nower): | he name of the person signing and the capacity in which the person |
| for and on behalf of  |   | ,  |
| ALBRIGHT & WILSON UK LIMITED  |   | • · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·                            |
| APC-  |   |  |
| 11111   |   |  |
| A P CREE, Company Secr  | etary   |  |
| 07 61 1995  |   |  |
| Date: 27 Relymon 1995   | <del></del>   |  |
|   |   |  |
| Form PCT/Model of general power of attorney (for seve   | eral international application                        | ns) (July 1992)  |



# CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION ON CHANGE OF NAME

Company No. 36833

The Registrar of Companies for England and Wales hereby certifies that

ALBRIGHT & WILSON UK LIMITED

having by special resolution changed its name, is now incorporated under the name of

RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED

Given at Companies House, London, the 10th March 2000

MRJMAYNE

For The Registrar Of Companies



COMPANIES HOUSE

#### MPD315/PCT

#### PATENT COOPERATIONA TREATY

FINAL SPECIFICATION (Description, Abstract and Claims)

Applicant:

RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED

TRADING AS ALBRIGHT & WILSON

**SURFACTANTS EUROPE** 

-AND-

**JOHNSON & JOHNSON** 

**CONSUMER COMPANIES INC** 

Inventors:

**KEVAN HATCHMAN** 

**ELVIN LUKENBACH** 

LAURA MCCULLOCH

**BENJAMIN WIEGAND** 

#### **ABSTRACT**

Personal care compositions contain at least 20% water, 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of oil, such as a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (a) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (b) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11 in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (a), said water surfactant and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25°C.

#### PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

The present invention relates to shampoo or cleaning compositions suitable for personal care applications in the form of  $I_1$  mesophase systems containing dispersed oil.

Dispersing oil in aqueous shampoo and body wash formulations has presented problems. To prevent the oil phase separating it must either be: (A) emulsified which involves dispersing the oil as colloidal single droplets; (B) microemulsified which involves forming a micellar solution with oil incorporated into surfactant micelles; (C) suspended in a structured surfactant system which typically comprises a dispersion of a surfactant mesophase in aqueous electrolyte; or (D) incorporated into a water soluble solid, pasty or gelatinous composition.

With the exception of microemulsions which are clear, thermodynamically stable, micellar solutions, the foregoing systems are necessarily opaque and contain the oil dispersed in a relatively coarse form, which does not deposit satisfactorily on skin or hair.

However microemulsions are difficult to formulate using the surfactants which are most effective in body wash and other personal care formulations and contain relatively low concentrations of surfactant.

We have now discovered that oil may be stably incorporated into the structure of an I<sub>1</sub> phase to form a clear gel-like composition which contains higher concentrations of surfactant and oil than conventional microemulsions, but which dissolves in water to form a microemulsion. The novel oil-in-I<sub>1</sub> compositions also form microemulsions on heating.

Surfactants are known to form mesophases or liquid crystal phases at concentrations above approximately 30% by weight based on the weight of water and surfactant. Mesophases are phases which exhibit a degree of order intermediate between typical liquids and solids. Generally mesophases combine long range order associated with crystals, with fast molecular motion common to liquids.

The formation of detergent mesophases is well documented. Different surfactants and surfactant mixtures differ widely in their ability to form the numerous different mesophases, and in respect of the conditions of concentration and temperature at which they are formed. For a typical surfactant of the type normally used in cleaning products the following mesophases are usually observed. The concentrations given are illustrative only and may vary considerably from one surfactant or surfactant mixture to the next.

Below approximately 30% surfactant an isotropic L<sub>1</sub> phase is formed (with micelles of surfactant in water). Above 30% surfactant many detergents form a M phase which is not normally used in personal care applications since it dos not show suitable flow characteristics and is difficult to dissolve or disperse in water. Above the concentrations required to form an M phase, but usually at concentrations of less than 80% active surfactant, i.e. 60%-80% a G-phase is formed. At concentrations higher than those required to form a G-phase, i.e. typically greater than 80% active surfactant, most surfactants form a hydrated solid, and some, especially non-ionic surfactants form a liquid phase containing dispersed micelle sized droplets of water - an inverted micellar solution known as an L<sub>2</sub> phase. L<sub>2</sub> detergent systems do not disperse readily in water and have a tendency to form undesirable gels, e.g. M phases, on dilution.

Some surfactants form viscous isotropic or VI phases. These are immobile phases usually with a vitreous appearance, and have been relatively little studied compared to the other phases discussed above. They have been virtually ignored in the context of formulating cleaning compositions because most of the surfactants and surfactant systems which are commonly used in cleaning compositions do not form VI phases, at least at

normal temperatures, or form them only within narrow concentration ranges and because their known properties as immobile gels has deterred formulators from investigating them. They are recognised as being the most viscous of the lyotropic mesophases.

The different surfactant phases can be recognised by a combination of appearance, rheology, textures under the microscope, electron microscopy and x-ray diffraction or neutron scattering. A detailed description, with illustrations, of the difference textures observable using a polarising microscope, is to be found in the paper by Rosevear JAOCS Vol 31, p628.

The following terms may require explanation or definition:

The "hydrophilic: lipophilic balance", or "HLB" value is used as a measure of the relative affinities of the surfactants for water and oil respectively and correlates with their effectiveness as emulsifiers. HLB value can easily be calculated for alcohol ethoxylates since it is one fifth of the weight percent of ethylene oxide based on the total mole weight. Other surfactants can be assigned equivalent values by applying more complicated formulae or by measuring their relative affinity for water and oil. An HLB value of 20 represents a completely water soluble oil insoluble surfactant, while an HLB value of 0 represents a completely oil soluble and water insoluble surfactant.

"Optically isotropic" surfactant phases do not normally tend to rotate the plane of polarisation of plane polarised light. If a drop of sample is placed between two sheets of optically plane polarising material whose planes are at right angles, and light is shone on to one sheet, optically isotropic surfactant samples do not appear substantially brighter than their surrounding when viewed through the other sheet. Optically anisotropic materials appear substantially brighter. Optically anisotropic mesophases typically show characteristic textures when viewed through a microscope between crossed polarisers, whereas optically isotropic phases usually show a featureless continuum.

"Newtonian liquids" have a viscosity which remains constant at different shear rates. For the purpose of this specification, liquids are considered Newtonian if the viscosity does not vary substantially at shear rates up to 1000 sec<sup>-1</sup>.

"Lamellar" phases are phases which comprise a plurality of bilayers of surfactant arranged in parallel and separated by liquid medium. They include both solid phases and the typical form of the liquid crystal G-phase. G-phases are typically pourable, non-Newtonian, anisotropic products. They are typically viscous-looking, opalescent materials with a characteristic "smeary" appearance on flowing. They form characteristic texture under the polarising microscope and freeze fractured samples have a lamellar appearance under the electron microscope. X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering similarly reveal a lamellar structure, with a principal peak typically between 4 and 10nm, usually 5 to 6nm. Higher order peaks, when present occur at double or higher integral multiples of the Q value of the principal peak. Q is the momentum transfer vector and is related, in the case of lamellar phases, to the repeat spacing d by the equation  $Q = \frac{2n}{d}$  [pi] where n is the order of the peak.

G-phases, however, can exist in several different forms, including domains of parallel sheets which constitute the bulk of the typical G-phases described above and spherulites formed from a number of concentric spheroidal shells, each of which is a bilayer of surfactant. In this specification the term "lamellar" will be reserved for compositions which are at least partly of the former type. Opaque compositions at least predominantly of the latter type in which the continuous phase is a substantially isotropic solution containing dispersed spherulites are referred to herein as "G-phase compositions". G-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as L<sub>(alpha)</sub> phases.

L<sub>1</sub>-phases are mobile, optically isotropic, and typically Newtonian liquids which show no texture under the polarising microscope. Electron microscopy is capable of resolving the texture of such phases only at very high magnifications, and X-ray or neutron scattering normally gives only a single broad peak typical of a liquid structure, at very small angles

close to the reference beam. The viscosity of an L<sub>1</sub>-phase is usually low, but may rise significantly as the concentration approaches the upper phase boundary.

"M-phases" are typically immobile, anisotropic products resembling low melting point waxes. They give characteristic textures under the polarising microscope, and a hexagonal diffraction pattern by X-ray or neutron diffraction which comprises a major peak, usually at values corresponding to a repeat spacing between 4 and 10nm, and sometimes higher order peaks, the first at a Q-value which is 3<sup>0.5</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak and the next double the Q-value of the principal peak. M-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as H-phases.

The viscous isotropic or "VI" phases are typically immobile, non-Newtonian, optically isotropic and are typically transparent, at least when pure. VI phases have a cubic symmetrical diffraction pattern, under X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering, with a principal peak and higher order peaks at 2<sup>0.5</sup> and 3<sup>0.5</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak.

These cubic liquid crystalline phases are sometimes observed immediately following the micellar phase at ambient temperature as the concentration of surfactant is increased. It has been proposed that such VI phases, sometimes referred to as I<sub>1</sub> phase, may arise from the packing of micelles (probably spherical) in a cubic lattice. At ambient temperature a further increase in surfactant concentration usually results in hexagonal phase (M<sub>1</sub>), which may be followed by a lamellar phase (G). I<sub>1</sub> phases, when they occur, are usually only observed over a narrow range of concentrations, typically just above those at which the L<sub>1</sub>-phase is formed. The location of such VI phases in a phase diagram suggests that the phase is built up of small closed surfactant aggregates in a water continuum.

An inverse form of the  $I_1$  phase (the  $I_2$  phase) has also been reported, possibly between the inverse hexagonal ( $M_2$ ) and  $L_2$  phases. It consists of a surfactant continuum containing a cubic array of inverted micelles. An alternative form of the VI phase called the  $V_1$  phase has been observed at concentrations between the M and G phases and may comprise a bicontinuous system. This may exhibit an even higher viscosity than the  $I_1$ . An inverse phase, the  $V_2$  phase, between the G and  $M_2$  phases has also been postulated.

VI phases are typically examples of "ringing gels". When a jar or beaker containing such a phase is sharply struck, a distinctive vibration can be felt in the composition.

The  $I_1/L_1$  transition temperature will be referred to herein as the melting point of the  $I_1$  phase for convenience, although it is not strictly speaking the melting point since the VI phases are not solids.

All references herein to the formation or existence of specific phases or structures are to be construed, unless the context requires otherwise, as references to their formation or existence at 20°C.

Hexagonal gels (M-phase) have been referred to in the prior art as cleaning compositions, e.g. GB 2 179 055, EP I 153 837 and colloidal gels formed with gelling agents such as synthetic polymers or gelatin have also been suggested, e.g. US 4 465 663.

However these compositions cannot be readily dissolved in water to form microemulsions. They are moreover usually opaque and of an unattractive appearance and often require the presence of solvents such as glycols which add to the cost and are environmentally undesirable.

The use of a type of ringing gel to suspend oil for cosmetic or pharmaceutical applications was described in US 4 026 818 but the formulation requires the presence of hydroxylic solvents and utilises a surfactant system which is unsuitable for shampoo applications. EP O 598 335 describes the use of various cubic phases including I<sub>1</sub> phases as laundry prespotters and for other cleaning formulations. If does not suggest how such phases could be used to suspend oil or form microemulsions. Normally attempts to

suspend oil in surfactant mesophases result in coarse droplets of oil being suspended in the aqueous phase of a structured surfactant.

Our invention provides a concentrated personal cleansing composition comprising, by weight of the composition, at least 20% water, 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of oil, such as a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (A) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (B) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11, in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (A), said surfactant water and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25°C.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an  $I_1$  phase over a comparatively broad surfactant concentration range e.g. more than  $\pm 5\%$  or greater, which range typically lies above 15% by weight total surfactant based on the weight of the composition e.g. between 20% and 40% by weight surfactant usually between 25% and 60%.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an I<sub>1</sub> phase which melts above 30°C e.g. above 35°C, most preferably above 40°C. Preferably the I<sub>1</sub> phase melts at a temperature substantially below 100°C, e.g. below 90°C, more preferably below 80°C, most preferably below 70°C, especially below 60°C, typically below 55°C, usually below 50°C.

The surfactant mixture preferably has a mean HLB based on the molar proportions of the components between 10 and 15 e.g. 11 to 14. The surfactants preferably comprise non-ionic surfactants such as ethoxylated alcohols. It has been found that highly ethoxylated fatty alcohols, e.g. more than 10 EO groups, preferably more than 15 EO groups, especially 18 to 50 EO groups form I<sub>1</sub> phases particularly readily.

Other non-ionic surfactants which may be present include:-

alkyl phenol ethoxylates, fatty acid ethoxylates, fatty acid monoalkylolamide ethoxylates, fatty alcohol propoxylates, fatty anime alkoxylates and fatty acid glyceryl ester ethoxylates. Other non-ionic compounds suitable for inclusion in compositions of the present invention include mixed ethylene oxide propylene oxide block copolymers, low relative molecular mass polyethylene glycols e.g. PEG600 and PEG200, ethylene glycol monoesters, amine oxides and alkyl polyglycosides, alkyl sugar esters including alkyl sucrose esters and alkyl oligosaccharide ester, alkyl capped polyvinyl alcohol and alkyl capped polyvinyl pyrrolidone.

Compositions of the invention may also comprise anionic surfactants, in addition to or instead of non-ionic surfactants. Anionic surfactant may comprise a  $C_{10-20}$  alkyl benzene sulphonate or an alkyl ether sulphate which is preferably the product obtained by ethoxylating a natural fatty or synthetic  $C_{10-20}$  e.g. a  $C_{12-14}$  alcohol with from 1 to 20, preferably 2 to 10 e.g. 3 to 4 ethyleneoxy groups, optionally stripping any unreacted alcohol, reacting the ethoxylated product with a sulphating agent and neutralising the resulting alkyl ether sulphuric acid with a base. The term also includes alkyl glyceryl sulphates, and random or block copolymerised alkyl ethoxy/propoxy sulphates.

The anionic surfactant may also comprise, for example,  $C_{10-20}$  e.g.  $C_{12-18}$  alkyl sulphate.

The surfactant may comprise a  $C_{8-20}$  e.g.  $C_{10-20}$  aliphatic soap. The soap may be saturated or unsaturated, straight or branched chain.

Preferred examples include dodecanoates, myristates, stearates, oleates, linoleates, linoleates and palmitates and coconut and tallow soaps.

The surfactant may include other anionic surfactants, such as olefin sulphonates, paraffin sulphonates, taurides, isethionates, ether sulphonates, ether carboxylates, aliphatic ester sulphonates e.g. alkyl glyceryl sulphonates, sulphosuccinates or sulphosuccinamates.

The cation of any anionic surfactant is typically sodium but may alternatively be potassium, lithium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, or an alkyl ammonium having up to 6 aliphatic carbon atoms including isopropyl ammonium, monoethanol ammonium, diethanol ammonium, and triethanol ammonium.

Ammonium and ethanol ammonium salts are generally more soluble than the sodium salts. Mixtures of the above cations may be used.

The composition may contain amphoteric surfactants such as betaines sulphobetaines, amido betaines or imidazoline betaines.

The  $I_1$  phase may be conveniently prepared by mixing the oil and oil soluble surfactant and adding sufficient water to the water soluble surfactant to maintain a lamellar phase. The oil and oil soluble surfactant may be stirred into the lamellar composition at elevated temperature, above the melting point of the desired  $I_1$  phase. The composition is then diluted with hot water until a microemulsion is formed and then cooled to solidify it into the  $I_1$  phase.

The oil is preferably a mineral oil (e.g. a low molecular weight petroleum ether having, for example, a boiling point below 120°C e.g. below 100°C especially below 80°C) or a lower molecular weight fatty ester (e.g. one having less than 25 carbon atoms) such as isopropyl esters of lauric isostearic or palmitic acids or their ethyl analogues. Other oils, including higher mol weight fatty esters, e.g. oleyl oleate, fatty glycerides, terpene oils such as limonene or silicone oils may present difficulties in providing clear compositions. Such oils can nevertheless be incorporated in clear formulations by blending with sufficient mineral oil (preferably low molecular weight mineral oil). The amount required varies according to the nature of the oil. Typically the blend contains at least 16%, based on the total weight of oil, of the mineral oil, especially 30 to 80%, typically 40 to 60%. Particularly preferred are vegetable oils such as coconut, evening primrose, groundnut, meadow foam, apricot kernel, peach kernel, avocado, jojoba and olive oil.

Oil soluble cosmetic or topical pharmaceutical ingredients may be dissolve in the oil including antiseptics, styptics, antidandruff agents such as zinc omadine (zinc pyrithione) and selenium disulphide, proteins, emollients such as lanolin, isopropyl myristate, glyceryl isostearate or propylene glycol distearate, dyes, perfumes and waxes. Water insoluble particulate solids including exfoliants such as talc, clays, polymer beads, sawdust, silica, seeds, ground nutshells and dicalcium phosphate, pearlisers such as mica or glycerol or ethylene glycol mono- or di-stearate, glitter additives and sunscreens such as titanium dioxide may be dispersed in the hot microemulsion prior to cooling. Porous particles (so called micro-sponges) containing absorbed active ingredients or gelatin or other microcapsules may be suspended. Other active ingredients which may be suspended include insect repellants and topical pharmaceutical preparations, e.g. preparations for treatment of acne, fungicides for athlete's foot or ringworm or antiseptics or antihistamines. Pigments, such as the iron oxides, may also be added.

Electrolytes tend to break I<sub>1</sub> phase structure and are preferably present in concentrations below 10% based on total weight of the compositions, more preferably below 5%, e.g. 0 to 3%, most preferably 0 to 1%. Generally we prefer that electrolyte be substantially absent. Adventitious chloride or sulphate present as impurities in the surfactant can be tolerated. Small amounts of builder such as citrates, pyrophosphates, polyphosphates may optionally be included.

Water soluble solvents are generally undesirable and are not required to form stable I<sub>1</sub> structures according to the invention. We therefore prefer that they should be substantially absent. Although small amounts of, for example, ethanol or propanol or of a water miscible polyhydric alcohol or alcohol ester may sometimes be desired for special purposes, they are preferably present in amounts less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 3% by weight, most preferably less than 2% by weight, e.g. less than 1% by weight.

The composition may optionally contain hydrotropes such as sodium lower alkyl benzene sulphonate e.g. sodium toluene, xylene or cumene sulphonate or urea, however these are not generally necessary and are not generally preferred. We prefer that these should be present in quantities less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 4%, especially less than 2% e.g. 0 to 1%. They may be useful occasionally to avoid haziness of the gel.

The total amount of water is preferably from 25 to 60% by weight of the composition, more preferably 30 to 50%, e.g. 35 to 50%. The total weight percentage of surfactant based on the weight of the composition is preferably from 15 to 35%, e.g. 20 to 30%. The proportion of oil is preferably greater than 5%, more preferably greater than 8%, e.g. 10 to 30%, especially 15 to 25% by weight based on the weight of the composition. The oil soluble surfactant is preferably present in a proportion of more than 1:5 based on the weight of oil, more preferably from 1:2 to 5:1. The oil soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB of from 3 to 9 e.g. 4 to 8.

The weight ratio of water soluble surfactant to oil soluble surfactant is preferably 1:1 to 30:1, more preferably 2:1 to 20:1, typically 3:1 to 15:1, e.g. 4:1 to 10:1. The water soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB greater than 12, more preferably greater than 13, especially 14 to 19.

The product may be cast into shaped bodies or formed into particles or granules, e.g. by spray cooling a hot solution of the  $L_1$  phase formed on melting the composition.

The composition may be converted into a microemulsion phase by addition of water, by heating above the melting point or by adding electrolyte such as salt and the invention includes L<sub>1</sub> phases when so prepared.

The invention will be illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | <u>w/w (%)</u> |
|---|------------|----------------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 20         | 20             |
| "EMPICOL"® 0251/70J (70%)               | 11.2       | 16             |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | 4.8        | 16             |
| "GLUCAPON"® 215 CS UP (65%)             | 6          | 9.2            |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 7.5        | 7.5            |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100%)                  | 2          | 2              |
| PERFUME (100%)                          | 0.5        | 0.5            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.1        | 0.1            |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| BENZOIC ACID (100%)                     | 0.3        | 0.3            |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (47%)                  | 0.1        | 0.2            |
| WATER                                   |            | Balance        |

The method of mixing comprised the following steps:-

- 1. Charge 50% of water
- 2. Heat to 60°C
- 3. Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and 47% NaOH dissolve with stirring
- 4. Add "EMPIGEN" BB
- 5. Add mineral oil and disperse with stirring
- 6. Add "EMPILAN" KB 2 and mix thoroughly
- 7. Add "EMPICOL" 0251/70j
- 8 Add remaining water
- 9 Add "GLUCAPON" 215 CS UP
- 10. Add further KB 2 until clear
- 11. Cool
- 12. Add evaporated water
- 13. Adjust pH

### Physical Data

| $: 5.5 \pm 0.1$  | Density @ 20°C      | $1.0 \pm 0.1 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ |
|------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| :~53% (typical)  | Appearance          | : Clear or Hazy Gel             |
| : Characteristic | Set Point (typical) | : 30°C                          |
|                  | :~53% (typical)     | : ~ 53% (typical) Appearance    |

Viscosity @ 20°C : N/A

The product was examined by x-ray diffraction and exhibited peaks at 13.145nm (intense and sharp), 7.943nm (ill defined) and 6.355nm (small), indicating cubic symmetry, and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution or heating. The latter gave good even distribution of oil applied to skin.

#### Example 2

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | <u>w/w (%)</u> |
|---|------------|----------------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 15         | 15             |
| "EMPICOL"® CDL30J/35 (22%)              | 8          | 35.4           |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | . 8        | 26.7           |
| "EMPICOL"® 0785 (40%)                   | 2          | 5              |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 6          | 6              |
| "EMPILAN"® KB6 (100%)                   | 6          | 6              |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.5        | 0.5            |
| PERFUME (100%)                          | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| "KATHON"®                               |            | 0.2            |
| WATER                                   |            | Balance        |
| TOTAL                                   | 45.8       | 100            |

# Physical Data

| Appearance | : Clear Liquid/Gel | Odour     | : Characteristic Odour |
|------------|--------------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Solids     | : 36.5% (typical)  | pH (100%) | : 5.5 - 6.5 (typical   |
| Odour      | : Characteristic   | Set Point | : 20 ± 5°C             |

Viscosity (Carrimed Rheometer @ 20°C: N/A

The product had small angle x-ray diffraction peaks characteristic of cubic symmetry and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution with water or warming. The latter gave good even deposition of oil on skin.

Examples 3 and 4

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form ringing gels:

| Component                  | 1          |         | 1          |         | 2 |  |
|----------------------------|------------|---------|------------|---------|---|--|
| Component                  | Solids (%) | w/w (%) | Solids (%) | w/w (%) |   |  |
| "EMPIGEN"® CDL30J/35 (22%) | 8          | 36.4    | 8          | 36.4    |   |  |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)        | 8          | 26.7    | 8          | 26.7    |   |  |
| "EMPICOL"® LB40 (40%)      | 4          | 7.5     | 3 .        | 7.5     |   |  |
| "EMPICOL"® CVH (90%)       | 4          | 4       |            |         |   |  |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)      | 5.5        | 5.5     | 6          | 6       |   |  |
| TRIETHANOLAMINE (100%)     | 1.1        | 1.1     |            |         |   |  |
| CITRIC ACID                | 1          | 0.75    | 0.75       | 0.75    |   |  |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE           |            |         |            |         |   |  |
| TETRACETIC ACID            | 0.05       | 0.05    | 0.05       | 0.05    |   |  |
| "KATHON"® CG (100%)        | 0.05       | 0.05    | 0.05       | 0.05    |   |  |
| LIGHT MINERAL (100%)       | 14         | 14      | 20 .       | 20      |   |  |
| WATER .                    |            | Balance |            | Balance |   |  |
| TOTAL                      | 45.7       | 100     | 46.1       | 100     |   |  |
| Appearance                 | Clear Gel  |         | Clear Gel  |         |   |  |

The following ingredients were mixed at 60 °C and cooled to form a clear 'ringing' gel.

Example 5

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 18         | 18      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 12         | 17.2    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | · 5·       | . 5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KBE2 (100 %)                    | 3          | 3       |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB6 (100 %)                     | 3          | 3       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 4          | 4       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 2          | 2       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.4        | 0.8     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | · 0.3   |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance |

# Example 6

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| HEAVY MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M70) (100 %) | 18         | 18      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 10.5       | 15      |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB2 (100 %)                     | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 4          | 4       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 2          | 2       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | 1.0     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance |

#### Physical Data

Density @ 20°C

: 1.0 +/- 0.1

pH (10 %)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5<sup>o</sup>C

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

## Method for examples 5 and 6

i) Charge water and heat to  $60^{\circ}$ C.

- ii) Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and NaOH. Dissolve with stirring.
- iii) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL and mix thoroughly.
- iv) Add glycerol.
- v) Add NaCl and disperse with stirring.
- vi) Add "EMPILAN" KBE2 and "EMPILAN" KB6 or "EMPILAN" KB12. Disperse with stirring.
- vii) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- viii) Add mineral and disperse with stirring.
- ix) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J and disperse with stirring.
- x) Add additional nonionic surfactant to clear (if necessary).
- xi) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xii) Add evaporated water
- xiii) Adjust pH and offload.

Example 7

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 9          | 9       |
| DOW CORNING DC 556 SILICONE FLUID (100 %)   | . 9        | 9       |
| "EMPICOL" 0251 70 J (70 %)                  | 12         | 17.2    |
| "EMPICOL" CED5 FL (100 %)                   | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPILAN" KB2 (100 %)                       | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" KB12 (100 %)                      | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPIGEN" BB (30 %)                         | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 4          | 4       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 2          | 2       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.4        | 0.8     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance |

The formulation forms a microemulsion at 60°C and forms a gel when cooled to ambient temperature.

# Example 8

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | <u>W/W (%)</u> |
|---|------------|----------------|
| HEAVY MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M70) (100 %) | 15.        | 15             |
| "CERAPHYL" ® GA-D (100 %)                   | 5          | 5              |
| "EMPICOL" 0251 70 J (70 %)                  | 12         | 17.2           |
| "EMPICOL" CED5 FL (100 %)                   | 5          | 5              |
| "EMPILAN" KBE2 (100 %)                      | 3.0        | 3.0            |
| "EMPILAN" KB12 (100 %)                      | 4.5        | 4.5            |
| "EMPIGEN" BB (30 %)                         | 3          | 10             |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 4          | 4              |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 2          | 2              |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.4        | 0.8            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1            |
| Na SALT                                     |            |                |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3            |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance        |

A hazy/opaque emulsion is formed at  $60^{\circ}$ C and cools to form a clear 'ringing' gel at ambient temperature.

# **Physical Data**

Density @ 20<sup>0</sup>C

: 1.0 +/-0.1

pH (10 %)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C

Odoui

Viscosity @ 20<sup>0</sup>C: N/A

# Method for examples 7 and 8

- i) Charge water and heat to 60°C.
- ii) Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and NaOH. Dissolve with stirring.
- iii) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL and mix thoroughly.
- iv) Add glycerol.
- v) Add NaCl and disperse with stirring.
- vi) Add "EMPILAN" KBE2 and "EMPILAN" KB12. Disperse with stirring.
- vii) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- viii) Blend 50/50 oil phase oil and cosmetic ingredient. Add to aqueous surfactant solution. Disperse with stirring to form homogeneous emulsion.
- ix) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J and disperse.
- x) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- . xi) Add evaporated water.
  - xii) Adjust pH and offload.

If gel is opaque, re-heat and add additional nonionic surfactant or water.

# Example 10

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 10         | 10      |
| "MIGLYOL" ® 818 (100 %)                     | 10         | 10      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 11         | 15.7    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN" ® KBE2 (100 %)                    | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 5          | 5       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 1          | 1       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | 1       |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       | _          | Balance |

Forms a microemulsion at 60°C and a 'ringing' gel is obtained after cooling.

# Example 11

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 10         | 10      |
| "MIGLYOL" ® 840                             | 10         | 10      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 11         | 15.7    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN" KBE2 (100 %)                      | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 5          | 5       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 1          | 1       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | 1       |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance |

#### Physical Data

Density @ 20<sup>0</sup>C

: 1.0 +/- 0.1

pH (10 %)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

# Method for examples 9, 10 and 11

- i) Blend 50/50 oil phase oil and cosmetic ingredient. Heat to  $60^{\circ}$ C.
- ii) Add glycerol and stir to disperse.
- iii) Add "EMPILAN" KBE2 and "EMPILAN" KB12. Disperse with stirring.
- iv) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL.
- v) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- vi) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J.
- vii) Add EDTA, citric acid, sodium benzoate and NaCl. Disperse with stirring.
- viii) Add water.
- ix) Add NaOH.
- x) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xi) Add evaporated water.
- xii) Adjust pH and offload.

#### Example 12

| Component                                | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|--|------------|---------|
| EMOLLIENT – FATTY ACID ESTER (100 %)     | 20         | 20      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)             | 12         | 17.2    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)              | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB6 (100 %)                  | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                    | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                  | 5          | 5       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                         | 1          | 1       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                  | 0.4        | 0.8     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %) | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                  |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                      | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                  | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                    | -          | Balance |

Clear gels have been prepared using the following fatty acid esters:

Isopropyl laurate ("ESTOL" ® IPL 1505)
Isopropyl myristate ("ESTOL" ® IPM 1512)
Isopropyl palmitate ("ESTOL" ® IPP 1517)
Isopropyl isostearate ("SCHERCOMOL" ® 318)

#### **Physical Data**

Density @  $20^{\circ}$ C : 1.0 +/- 0.1 pH (10 %) : 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel Odour : Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

#### Method for example 12

- i) Heat oil phase to 60°C.
- ii) Add "EMPILAN" KB6 and stir to disperse.
- iii) Add glycerol and stir to disperse.
- iv) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- v) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL.

- vi) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J.
- vii) Add EDTA, NaCl, sodium benzoate and citric acid. Stir to disperse.
- viii) Add water.
- ix) Add NaOH.
- x) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xi) Add evaporated water.
- xii) Check pH (10 %).
- xiii) Adjust pH and offload.

The products in each case exhibited cubic symmetry and formed clear microemulsions or dilution with water or heating. The registered trade marks noted above have the following significance:-

```
"EMPICOL" CVH is a C<sub>8</sub> alkyl ether carboxylic acid
```

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" LB40 is a C<sub>8</sub> C<sub>10</sub> alkyl sulphate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" 0251/70J is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 3 mole ethoxy sulphate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" 9758 is a C<sub>10</sub> alkyl sulphate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" CED 5FL is lauryl 6 mole ethoxy carboxylic acid

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPIGEN" BB is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl betaine

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPIGEN" CDL is coconut ampho acetate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPILAN" KB2 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 2 mole ethoxylate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPILAN" KB6 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 6 mole ethoxylate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPILAN" KB12 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 12 mole ethoxylate

<sup>&</sup>quot;GLUCAPON" 215CS is a C<sub>8-10</sub> alkyl polyclucoside D.P. 1.5

<sup>&</sup>quot;KATHON" CG is a proprietary biocide

<sup>&</sup>quot;DOW CORNING" DC556 is phenyl trimethicone

<sup>&</sup>quot;CERAPHYL" GA-D is maleated soya bean oil

<sup>&</sup>quot;MIGLYOL" 810/812S is capric/caprylic triglyceride

<sup>&</sup>quot;MIGLYOL" is capric/caprylic/linoleic trigyceride

<sup>&</sup>quot;MIGLYOL" 840 is dipropylene glycol dicaprylate/dicaprate

#### **CLAIMS**

- 1. A concentrated personal cleansing composition comprising, by weight of the composition, at least 20% water, 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of oil wherein said surfactant comprises (A) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (B) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11, in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (A), said surfactant water and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25°C.
- 2. A composition according to claim 1 wherein the total surfactant has a mean HLB between 10 and 15.
- 3. A composition according to claim 1 wherein said oil comprises a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil
- 4. A composition according to either of claims 1 and 3 wherein the oil comprises at least 16% based on the weight of oil, of a mineral oil.
- 5. A method for preparing a composition according to claim 1 comprising: (i) forming a mixture (a) of said oil and said oil soluble surfactant; (ii) mixing said mixture (a) with a mixture (b) of said water soluble surfactant and sufficient water to form a lamellar phase with said water soluble surfactant; (iii) maintaining said mixture of (a) and (b) above the I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature of said composition while diluting said mixture of (a) and (b) with water to form said composition; and (iv) cooling said composition below the I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature.

# PATENTS ACT 1977

# PRELIMINARY SPECIFICATION (Description)

# PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

Applicant:

ALBRIGHT & WILSON UK LIMITED

Inventors:

#### PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

The present invention relates to shampoo or cleaning compositions suitable for personal care applications in the form of  $I_1$  mesophase systems containing dispersed oil.

Dispersing oil in aqueous shampoo and body wash formulations has presented problems. To prevent the oil phase separating it must either be: (A) emulsified which involves dispersing the oil as colloidal single droplets; (B) microemulsified which involves forming a micellar solution with oil incorporated into surfactant micelles; (C) suspended in a structured surfactant system which typically comprises a dispersion of a surfactant mesophase in aqueous electrolyte; or (D) incorporated into a water soluble solid, pasty or gelatinous composition.

With the exception of microemulsions which are clear, thermodynamically stable, micellar solutions, the foregoing systems are necessarily opaque and contain the oil dispersed in a relatively coarse form, which does not deposit satisfactorily on skin or hair.

However microemulsions are difficult to formulate using the surfactants which are most effective in body wash and other personal care formulations and contain relatively low concentrations of surfactant.

We have now discovered that oil may be stably incorporated into the structure of an I<sub>1</sub> phase to form a clear gel-like composition which contains higher concentrations of surfactant and oil than conventional microemulsions, but, which dissolves in water to form a microemulsion. The novel oil-in-I<sub>1</sub> compositions also form microemulsions on heating.

Surfactants are known to form mesophases or liquid crystal phases at concentrations above approximately 30% by weight based on the weight of water and surfactant. Mesophases are phases which exhibit a degree of order intermediate between typical liquids and solids. Generally mesophases combine long range order associated with crystals, with fast molecular motion common to liquids.

The formation of detergent mesophases is well documented. Different surfactants and surfactant mixtures differ widely in their ability to form the numerous different mesophases, and in respect of the conditions of concentration and temperature at which they are formed. For a typical surfactant of the type normally used in cleaning products the following mesophases are usually observed. The concentrations given are illustrative only and may vary considerably from one surfactant or surfactant mixture to the next.

Below approximately 30% surfactant an isotropic L<sub>1</sub> phase is formed (with micelles of surfactant in water). Above 30% surfactant many detergents form a M phase which is not normally used in personal care applications since it dos not show suitable flow characteristics and is difficult to dissolve or disperse in water. Above the concentrations required to form an M phase, but usually at concentrations of less than 80% active surfactant, i.e. 60%-80% a G-phase is formed. At concentrations higher than those required to form a G-phase, i.e. typically greater than 80% active surfactant, most surfactants form a hydrated solid, and some, especially non-ionic surfactants form a liquid phase containing dispersed micelle sized droplets of water - an inverted micellar solution known as an L<sub>2</sub> phase. L<sub>2</sub> detergent systems do not disperse readily in water and have a tendency to form undesirable gels, e.g. M phases, on dilution.

Some surfactants form viscous isotropic or VI phases. These are immobile phases usually with a vitreous appearance, and have been relatively little studied compared to the other phases discussed above. They have been virtually ignored in the context of formulating cleaning compositions because most of the surfactants and surfactant systems which are commonly used in cleaning compositions do not form VI phases, at least at normal temperatures, or form them only within narrow concentration ranges and because their known properties as immobile gels has deterred formulators from investigating them. They are recognised as being the most viscous of the lyotropic mesophases.

The different surfactant phases can be recognised by a combination of appearance, rheology, textures under the microscope, electron microscopy and x-ray diffraction or neutron scattering. A detailed description, with illustrations, of the difference textures observable using a polarising microscope, is to be found in the paper by Rosevear JAOCS Vol 31, p628.

The following terms may require explanation or definition:

The "hydrophilic: lipophilic balance", or "HLB" value is used as a measure of the relative affinities of the surfactants for water and oil respectively and correlates with their effectiveness as emulsifiers. HLB value can easily be calculated for alcohol ethoxylates since it is one fifth of the weight percent of ethylene oxide based on the total mole weight. Other surfactants can be assigned equivalent values by applying more complicated formulae or by measuring their relative affinity for water and oil. An HLB value of 20 represents a completely water soluble oil insoluble surfactant, while an HLB value of 0 represents a completely oil soluble and water insoluble surfactant.

"Optically isotropic" surfactant phases do not normally tend to rotate the plane of polarisation of plane polarised light. If a drop of sample is placed between two sheets of optically plane polarising material whose planes are at right angles, and light is shone on to one sheet, optically isotropic surfactant samples do not appear substantially brighter than their surrounding when viewed through the other sheet. Optically anisotropic materials appear substantially brighter. Optically anisotropic mesophases typically show characteristic textures when viewed through a microscope between crossed polarisers, whereas optically isotropic phases usually show a featureless continuum.

"Newtonian liquids" have a viscosity which remains constant at different shear rates. For the purpose of this specification, liquids are considered Newtonian if the viscosity does not vary substantially at shear rates up to 1000 sec<sup>-1</sup>.

"Lamellar" phases are phases which comprise a plurality of bilayers of surfactant arranged in parallel and separated by liquid medium. They include both solid phases and the typical form of the liquid crystal G-phase. G-phases are typically pourable, non-Newtonian, anisotropic products. They are typically viscous-looking, opalescent materials with a characteristic "smeary" appearance on flowing. They form characteristic texture under the polarising microscope and freeze fractured samples have a lamellar appearance under the electron microscope. X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering similarly reveal a lamellar structure, with a principal peak typically between 4 and 10nm, usually 5 to 6nm. Higher order peaks, when present occur at double or higher integral multiples of the Q value of the principal peak. Q is the momentum transfer vector and is related, in the case of lamellar phases, to the repeat spacing d by the equation  $Q = \frac{2n}{d}$  [pi] where n is the order of the peak.

G-phases, however, can exist in several different forms, including domains of parallel sheets which constitute the bulk of the typical G-phases described above and spherulites formed from a number of concentric spheroidal shells, each of which is a bilayer of surfactant. In this specification the term "lamellar" will be reserved for compositions which are at least partly of the former type. Opaque compositions at least predominantly of the latter type in which the continuous phase is a substantially isotropic solution containing dispersed spherulites are referred to herein as "G-phase compositions". G-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as  $L_{(alpha)}$  phases.

L<sub>1</sub>-phases are mobile, optically isotropic, and typically Newtonian liquids which show no texture under the polarising microscope. Electron microscopy is capable of resolving the texture of such phases only at very high magnifications, and X-ray or neutron scattering normally gives only a single broad peak typical of a liquid structure, at very small angles close to the reference beam. The viscosity of an L<sub>1</sub>-phase is usually low, but may rise significantly as the concentration approaches the upper phase boundary.

"M-phases" are typically immobile, anisotropic products resembling low melting point waxes. They give characteristic textures under the polarising microscope, and a hexagonal diffraction pattern by X-ray or neutron diffraction which comprises a major peak, usually at values corresponding to a repeat spacing between 4 and 10nm, and sometimes higher order peaks, the first at a Q-value which is 3<sup>0.5</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak and the next double the Q-value of the principal peak. M-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as H-phases.

The viscous isotropic or "VI" phases are typically immobile, non-Newtonian, optically isotropic and are typically transparent, at least when pure. VI phases have a cubic symmetrical diffraction pattern, under X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering, with a principal peak and higher order peaks at 2<sup>0.5</sup> and 3<sup>0.5</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak.

These cubic liquid crystalline phases are sometimes observed immediately following the micellar phase at ambient temperature as the concentration of surfactant is increased. It has been proposed that such VI phases, sometimes referred to as I<sub>1</sub> phase, may arise from the packing of micelles (probably spherical) in a cubic lattice. At ambient temperature a further increase in surfactant concentration usually results in hexagonal phase (M<sub>1</sub>), which may be followed by a lamellar phase (G). I<sub>1</sub> phases, when they occur, are usually only observed over a narrow range of concentrations, typically just above those at which the L<sub>1</sub>-phase is formed. The location of such VI phases in a phase diagram suggests that the phase is built up of small closed surfactant aggregates in a water continuum.

An inverse form of the  $I_1$  phase (the  $I_2$  phase) has also been reported, possibly between the inverse hexagonal ( $M_2$ ) and  $L_2$  phases. It consists of a surfactant continuum containing a cubic array of inverted micelles. An alternative form of the VI phase called the  $V_1$  phase has been observed at concentrations between the M and G phases and may comprise a bicontinuous system. This may exhibit an even higher viscosity than the  $I_1$ . An inverse phase, the  $V_2$  phase, between the G and  $M_2$  phases has also been postulated.

VI phases are typically examples of "ringing gels". When a jar or beaker containing such a phase is sharply struck, a distinctive vibration can be felt in the composition.

The  $I_1/L_1$  transition temperature will be referred to herein as the melting point of the  $I_1$  phase for convenience, although it is not strictly speaking the melting point since the VI phases are not solids.

All references herein to the formation or existence of specific phases or structures are to be construed, unless the context requires otherwise, as references to their formation or existence at 20°C.

Hexagonal gels (M-phase) have been referred to in the prior art as cleaning compositions, e.g. GB 2 179 055, EP I 153 837 and colloidal gels formed with gelling agents such as synthetic polymers or gelatin have also been suggested, e.g. US 4 465 663.

However these compositions cannot be readily dissolved in water to form microemulsions. They are moreover usually opaque and of an unattractive appearance and often require the presence of solvents such as glycols which add to the cost and are environmentally undesirable.

The use of a type of ringing gel to suspend oil for cosmetic or pharmaceutical applications was described in US 4 026 818 but the formulation requires the presence of hydroxylic solvents and utilises a surfactant system which is unsuitable for shampoo applications. EP O 598 335 describes the use of various cubic phases including I<sub>1</sub> phases as laundry prespotters and for other cleaning formulations. If does not suggest how such phases could be used to suspend oil or form microemulsions. Normally attempts to suspend oil in surfactant mesophases result in coarse droplets of oil being suspended in the aqueous phase of a structured surfactant.

Our invention provides a concentrated personal cleansing composition comprising at least 20% water, 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of a mineral, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (A) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (B) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11, in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (A), said surfactant water and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25°C.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an  $I_1$  phase over a comparatively broad surfactant concentration range e.g. more than  $\pm$  5% or greater, which range typically lies above 15% by weight total surfactant based on the weight of the composition e.g. between 20% and 40% by weight surfactant usually between 25% and 60%.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an I<sub>1</sub> phase which melts above 30°C e.g. above 35°C, most preferably above 40°C. Preferably the I<sub>1</sub> phase melts at a temperature substantially below 100°C, e.g. below 90°C, more preferably below 80°C, most preferably below 70°C, especially below 60°C, typically below 55°C, usually below 50°C.

The surfactant mixture preferably has a mean HLB based on the molar proportions of the components between 10 and 15 e.g. 11 to 14. The surfactants preferably comprise non-ionic surfactants such as ethoxylated alcohols. It has been found that highly ethoxylated fatty alcohols, e.g. more than 10 EO groups, preferably more than 15 EO groups, especially 18 to 50 EO groups form I<sub>1</sub> phases particularly readily.

Other non-ionic surfactants which may be present include:-

alkyl phenol ethoxylates, fatty acid ethoxylates, fatty acid monoalkylolamide ethoxylates, fatty alcohol propoxylates, fatty anime alkoxylates and fatty acid glyceryl ester ethoxylates. Other non-ionic compounds suitable for inclusion in compositions of the present invention include mixed ethylene oxide propylene oxide alkoxylates, low relative molecular mass polyethylene glycols e.g. PEG600 and PEG200, ethylene glycol monoesters, amine oxides and alkyl polyglycosides, alkyl sugar esters including alkyl sucrose esters and alkyl oligosaccharide ester, alkyl capped polyvinyl alcohol and alkyl capped polyvinyl pyrrolidone.

Compositions of the invention may also comprise anionic surfactants, in addition to or instead of non-ionic surfactants. Anionic surfactant may comprise a C<sub>10-20</sub> alkyl benzene sulphonate or an alkyl ether sulphate which is preferably the product obtained by ethoxylating a natural fatty or synthetic C<sub>10-20</sub> e.g. a C<sub>12-14</sub> alcohol with from 1 to 20, preferably 2 to 10 e.g. 3 to 4 ethyleneoxy groups, optionally stripping any unreacted alcohol, reacting the ethoxylated product with a sulphating agent and neutralising the resulting alkyl ether sulphuric acid with a base. The term also includes alkyl glyceryl sulphates, and random or block copolymerised alkyl ethoxy/propoxy sulphates.

The anionic surfactant may also comprise, for example, C<sub>10-20</sub> e.g. C<sub>12-18</sub> alkyl sulphate.

The surfactant may comprise a  $C_{8-20}$  e.g.  $C_{10-20}$  aliphatic soap. The soap may be saturated or unsaturated, straight or branched chain.

Preferred examples include dodecanoates, myristates, stearates, oleates, linoleates, linoleates and palmitates and coconut and tallow soaps.

The surfactant may include other anionic surfactants, such as olefin sulphonates, paraffin sulphonates, taurides, isethionates, ether sulphonates, ether carboxylates, aliphatic ester sulphonates e.g. alkyl glyceryl sulphonates, sulphosuccinates or sulphosuccinamates.

The cation of any anionic surfactant is typically sodium but may alternatively be potassium, lithium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, or an alkyl ammonium having up to 6 aliphatic carbon atoms including isopropyl ammonium, monoethanol ammonium, diethanol ammonium, and triethanol ammonium.

Ammonium and ethanol ammonium salts are generally more soluble than the sodium salts. Mixtures of the above cations may be used.

The composition may contain amphoteric surfactants such as betaines sulphobetaines, amido betaines or imidazoline betaines.

The  $I_1$  phase may be conveniently prepared by mixing the oil and oil soluble surfactant and adding sufficient water to the water soluble surfactant to maintain a lamellar phase. The oil and oil soluble surfactant may be stirred into the lamellar composition at elevated temperature, above the melting point of the desired  $I_1$  phase. The composition is then diluted with hot water until a microemulsion is formed and then cooled to solidify it into the  $I_1$  phase.

The oil is preferably a mineral oil (e.g. a low molecular weight petroleum ether) or a fatty glyceride, a terpene oil such as limonene or a silicone oil. Mixtures of oils may be used. Particularly preferred are vegetable oils such as coconut, evening primrose, groundnut, meadow foam, apricot kernel, peach kernel, avocado, jojoba and olive oil. Oil soluble cosmetic or topical pharmaceutical ingredients may be dissolve in the oil including antiseptics, styptics, antidandruff agents such as zinc omadine (zinc pyrithione) and selenium disulphide, proteins, emollients such as lanolin, isopropyl myristate, glyceryl isostearate or propylene glycol distearate, dyes, perfumes and waxes. Water insoluble particulate solids including exfoliants such as talc, clays, polymer beads, sawdust, silica, seeds, ground nutshells and dicalcium phosphate, pearlisers such as mica or glycerol or ethylene glycol mono- or di-stearate, glitter additives and sunscreens such as titanium dioxide may be dispersed in the hot microemulsion prior to cooling. Porous particles (so called micro-sponges) containing absorbed active ingredients or gelatin or other microcapsules may be suspended. Other active ingredients which may be suspended include insect repellants and topical pharmaceutical preparations, e.g. preparations for treatment of acne, fungicides for athlete's foot or ringworm or antiseptics or antihistamines. Pigments, such as the iron oxides, may also be added.

Electrolytes tend to break  $I_1$  phase structure and are preferably present in concentrations below 10% based on total weight of the compositions, more preferably below 5%, e.g. 0 to 3%, most preferably 0 to 1%. Generally we prefer that electrolyte be substantially absent. Adventitious chloride or sulphate present as impurities in the surfactant can be tolerated. Small amounts of builder such as citrates, pyrophosphates, polyphosphates may optionally be included.

Water soluble solvents are generally undesirable and are not required to form stable I<sub>1</sub> structures according to the invention. We therefore prefer that they should be substantially absent. Although small amounts of, for example, ethanol or propanol may sometimes be desired for special purposes, they are preferably present in amounts less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 3% by weight, most preferably less than 2% by weight, e.g. less than 1% by weight.

The composition may optionally contain hydrotropes such as sodium lower alkyl benzene sulphonate e.g. sodium toluene, xylene or cumene sulphonate or urea, however these are not generally necessary and are not generally preferred. We prefer that these should be present in quantities less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 4%, especially less than 2% e.g. 0 to 1%. They may be useful occasionally to avoid haziness of the gel.

The total amount of water is preferably from 25 to 60% by weight of the composition, more preferably 30 to 50%, e.g. 35 to 50%. The total weight percentage of surfactant based on the weight of the composition is preferably from 15 to 35%, e.g. 20 to 30%. The proportion of oil is preferably greater than 5%, more preferably greater than 8%, e.g. 10 to 30%, especially 15 to 25% by weight based on the weight of the composition. The oil soluble surfactant is preferably present in a proportion of more than 1:5 based on the weight of oil, more preferably from 1:2 to 5:1. The oil soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB of from 3 to 9 e.g. 4 to 8.

The weight ratio of water soluble surfactant to oil soluble surfactant is preferably 1:1 to 30:1, more preferably 2:1 to 20:1, typically 3:1 to 15:1, e.g. 4:1 to 10:1. The water soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB greater than 12, more preferably greater than 13, especially 14 to 19.

The product may be cast into shaped bodies or formed into particles or granules, e.g. by spray cooling a hot solution of the  $L_1$  phase formed on melting the composition.

The composition may be converted into a microemulsion phase by addition of water, by heating above the melting point or by adding electrolyte such as salt and the invention includes  $L_1$  phases when so prepared.

The invention will be illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | <u>w/w (%)</u> |
|---|------------|----------------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 20         | 20             |
| "EMPICOL"® 0251/70J (70%)               | 11.2       | 16             |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | 4.8        | 16             |
| "GLUCAPON"® 215 CS UP (65%)             | 6          | 9.2            |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 7.5        | 7.5            |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100%)                  | 2          | · 2            |
| PERFUME (100%)                          | 0.5        | 0.5            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.1        | 0.1            |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| BENZOIC ACID (100%)                     | 0.3        | 0.3            |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (47%)                  | 0.1        | 0.2            |
| WATER                                   |            | Balance        |

### The method of mixing comprised the following steps:-

- 1. Charge 50% of water
- 2. Heat to 60°C
- 3. Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and 47% NaOH dissolve with stirring
- 4. Add "EMPIGEN" BB
- 5. Add mineral oil and disperse with stirring
- 6. Add "EMPILAN" KB 2 and mix thoroughly
- 7. Add "EMPICOL" 0251/70j
- 8 Add remaining water
- 9 Add "GLUCAPON" 215 CS UP
- 10. Add further KB 2 until clear
- 11. Cool
- 12. Add evaporated water
- 13. Adjust pH

### **Physical Data**

| pH (10%)   | $: 5.5 \pm 0.1$   | Density @ 20°C      | $: 1.0 \pm 0.1 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ |
|------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Solids (%) | : ~ 53% (typical) | Appearance          | : Clear or Hazy Gel               |
| Odour      | : Characteristic  | Set Point (typical) | : 30°C                            |

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

The product was examined by x-ray diffraction and exhibited peaks at 13.145nm (intense and sharp), 7.943nm (ill defined) and 6.355nm (small), indicating cubic symmetry, and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution or heating. The latter gave good even distribution of oil applied to skin.

Example 2

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | w/w (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 15         | 15      |
| "EMPICOL"® CDL30J/35 (22%)              | 8          | 35.4    |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | 8          | 26.7    |
| "EMPICOL"® 0785 (40%)                   | 2          | 5       |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN"® KB6 (100%)                   | 6          | 6       |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.5        | 0.5     |
| PERFUME (100%)                          | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| "KATHON"®                               |            | 0.2     |
| WATER                                   |            | Balance |
| TOTAL                                   | 45.8       | 100     |

### **Physical Data**

Appearance : Clear Liquid/Gel Odour : Characteristic Odour Solids : 36.5% (typical) pH (100%) : 5.5 - 6.5 (typical Odour : Characteristic Set Point :  $20 \pm 5$ °C

Viscosity (Carrimed Rheometer @ 20°C : N/A

The product had small angle x-ray diffraction peaks characteristic of cubic symmetry and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution with water or warming. The latter gave good even deposition of oil on skin.

Examples 3 and 4

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form ringing gels:

| Component                  | j          |         | 2          | 2       |
|----------------------------|------------|---------|------------|---------|
| Component                  | Solids (%) | w/w (%) | Solids (%) | w/w (%) |
| "EMPIGEN"® CDL30J/35 (22%) | 8          | 36.4    | 8          | 36.4    |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)        | 8          | 26.7    | 8          | 26.7    |
| "EMPICOL"® LB40 (40%)      | 4          | 7.5     | 3          | 7.5     |
| "EMPICOL"® CVH (90%)       | 4          | 4       |            |         |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)      | 5.5        | 5.5     | . 6        | 6       |
| TRIETHANOLAMINE (100%)     | 1.1        | 1.1     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID                | 1          | 0.75    | 0.75       | 0.75    |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE           |            |         |            |         |
| TETRACETIC ACID            | 0.05       | 0.05    | 0.05       | 0.05    |
| "KATHON"® CG (100%)        | 0.05       | 0.05    | 0.05       | 0.05    |
| LIGHT MINERAL (100%)       | . 14       | 14      | 20         | 20      |
| WATER                      |            | Balance |            | Balance |
| TOTAL                      | 45.7       | 100     | 46.1       | 100     |
| Appearance                 | Clear Gel  |         | Clear Gel  |         |

The products in each case exhibited cubic symmetry and formed clear microemulsions or dilution with water or heating. The registered trade marks noted above have the following significance:-

- "EMPICOL" CVH is a C<sub>8</sub> alkyl ether carboxylic acid
- "EMPICOL" LB40 is a C<sub>8</sub> C<sub>10</sub> alkyl sulphate
- "EMPICOL" 0251/70J is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 3 mole ethoxy sulphate
- "EMPICOL" 9758 is a C<sub>10</sub> alkyl sulphate
- "EMPIGEN" BB is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl betaine
- "EMPIGEN" CDL is coconut ampho acetate
- "EMPILAN" KB2 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 2 mole ethoxylate
- "EMPILAN" KB6 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 6 mole ethoxylate
- "GLUCAPON" 215CS is a C<sub>8-10</sub> alkyl polyclucoside D.P. 1.5
- "KATHON" CG is a proprietary biocide

# Exhibit 4



Huntsman Surface Sciences UK Limited

P O Box 9761 210 – 222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B69 4XB

Telephone +44 (0) 121 429 6700 Facsimile +44 (0) 121 420 5700

Date
Direct Tel

Direct Fax

Your Ref

Our Ref

December 05, 2001 +44 (0) 121 420 5431 +44 (0) 121 420 5437

000

00945731.8 MPD315/EP/PCT/ RGMS/SMSL1

> VIA FAX – CONFIRMATION BY COURIER

European Patent Office Erhardtstrasse 27 D-80298 Munich GERMANY

**Dear Sirs** 

ENTRY INTO REGIONAL PHASE
EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION NO. 00945731.8
APPLICANT: RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED AND
JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES INC
ASSIGNED TO HUNTSMAN INTERNATIONAL LLC

We file herewith the following document sin respect of entry into the regional stand before the EPO under Chapter II PCT. The 30 month period from priority expires on 10 December 2001.

Form 1200

Voucher for payment of fees from our EPO Deposit Account

Number: 28 05 03 16 and comprising

|                                    | DEIVI         |
|------------------------------------|---------------|
| Filing Fee                         | 248.39        |
| Designation Fees (18 x DEM 148.64) | 2675.52       |
| 50% Examination Fee                | 1399.40       |
| Claims Fee                         | <u>_78,23</u> |
|                                    | 4401.54       |
|                                    | ======        |

Contd/....

European Patent Office Munich

December 05, 2001

We would advise that this Patent Application was part of the assets, which has now been sold to HUNTSMAN INTERNATIONAL LLC, a company incorporated in the state of Delaware had having its principal place of business at 500 Huntsman Way, Salt Lake City, Utah 84108, USA, and this was advised to you in our letter of August 14, 2001 (a copy of which is enclosed).

If you require any further information with regard to the above please do not hesitate to contact this office.

Yours faithfully

For and on behalf of

Huntsman Surface Sciences UK Limited

R G W SAVIDGE

Authorised Representative (GA43702)

**Encs** 



### Eintritt in die regi nale Phase vor dem EPA als Bestimmungsamt oder ausgewähltem Amt

# Entry into the regional phase before the EPO as designated or elected Office

### Entrée dans la phase régionale devant l'OEB agissant en qualité d'office désigné ou élu

|             | nic     | ropäische Anmeldenummer oder, falls<br>iht bekannt, PCT-Aktenzeichen oder<br>T-Veröffentlichungsnummer   | kr          | uropean application number, or, if not nown, PCT application or publication umber  | br         | uméro da dépôt de la domando de<br>avet européen ou, à défaut, numéro<br>dépôt PCT ou de publication PCT   |
|-------------|---------|--|-------------|--|------------|--|
|             | _       |  | _           | 00945731.8   | _          |  |
|             |         | ichen des Anmalders oder Vertreters<br>ax. 15 Positionen)  |             | oplicant's or representative's reference<br>nax. 15 spaces)  | Fid<br>(15 | férence du demandeur ou du mandata :<br>5 caractères ou espaces au maximum   |
|             |         | ~  |             | MPD315/PCT/EP  |            |  |
| $\boxtimes$ | 1.      | Anmelder Die Angaben über den (die) Anmelder sind in der internationalen Veröffentlichung enthalten oder vom Internationalen Büro nach der internationalen Veröffentlichung vermerkt werden. | 1.          | Applicant Indications concerning the applicant(s) are contained in the international publication or recorded by the International Bureau after the international publication.  Changes which have not yet been | 1.         | Les indications concernant le(s) de-<br>mandeur(s) figurent dans la publicatio<br>internationale ou ont été enregistre-<br>par le Bureau international après la<br>publication internationale. |
| ب           |         | Änderungen, die das Internationale<br>Büro noch nicht vermerkt hat, sind<br>auf einem Zusatzblatt angegeben.   |             | recorded by the international Bureau are set out on an additional sheet.   |            | Les changements qui n'ont pas ence<br>été enragistrés par le Buresu inter-<br>national sont indiqués sur une feui!}e<br>additionnelle.   |
|             |         | Zustellanschrift<br>(siehe Merkolatt II, 1)  |             | Address for correspondence (see Notes II, 1)   |            | Adresse pour la correspondance (voir notice II, 1)   |
|             |         |  |             | AS IN 2  |            |  |
| •••••       | <b></b> |  |             | •  |            |  |
|             | 2.      | Vertreter  | 2.          | Representative   | 2.         | Mandataire   |
|             |         | Name (Nur einen Vertreter angeben,<br>der in das europäische Patentregister<br>eingetragen und an den zugestellt<br>wirdt  |             | Name (Name only one representative who will be listed in the Register of European Patents and to whom notification will be made)   |            | Nom (N'indiquer qu' un equi<br>mandataire, qui sera inscrit au<br>Registre européen des brevets et<br>auquel signification sera faite)   |
|             |         | Grachäftsenschrift<br>Huntsm<br>210-22   | an :<br>2 H | DON MADGWICK <u>SAVIDGE</u> Address of place of business  Surface Sciences UK Limite agley Road West, Oldbury, ands B69 4XB ENGLAND  | ed         | Adresse professionnelle  |
|             |         | Telefon  |             | Telophone<br>+44 121 420 5430  |            | Téléphone  |
|             |         | Telefax Telex  |             | Fax Telex  |            | Téléfax Télex  |
|             |         | Weitere(r) Vertreter auf Zusatzblatt   | •           | : AA 121 A20 5A37<br>Additional representativels) on<br>edditional aheet   |            | Autre(s) mandataire(s) sur une fet. : additionnelle  |
|             | 3.      | Vollmacht  | 3.          | Authorisation  | 3.         | Pouvoir  |
|             |         | Einzelvollmacht ist beigefügt.   |             | Individual authorisation is attached.  |            | Un pouvoir special est Joint.  |
| _;          |         | Allgameine Volimacht ist registriert unter Nummer:   |             | General authorisation has been registered under No-  |            | Un pouvoir géneral a été enregistre<br>aous le nº :  |
|             |         |  |             | GA43702  |            |  |
|             |         | Allgemeine Vollmacht ist eingereicht, aber noch nicht registriert.   |             | A general authorisation has been filed, but not yet registered.  |            | Un pouvoir gánéral a ét <b>á d</b> áposa<br>mais n'est pas encore enregistra   |
| ت           |         | Die beim EPA als PCT-Anmeldeamt<br>eingereichte Vollmacht schließt<br>ausdrücklich die regionale Phase ein.  |             | The authorisation filed with the EPO as PCT receiviE. Office expressly includes the regional phase.  |            | Le pouvoir général déposé à l'OEE agiopant en qualité d'office récepts au titre du PCT s'applique expressement à la phase régionale.   |

ment à la phase régionale.

Prüfungsantrag
Hiermit wird die Prüfung der Anmeldeng gemäß Art. 94 EPU beantragt.
 Die Prüfungsgebühr wird (wurde) entrichtet.

Prüfungsantrag in einer zugelassenen Nichtamtssprache (siehe Markblatt III, 6.2) : 4. Request for examination
Examination of the application under
Art. 94 EPC is hereby requested.
The examination fee is being (has
been, will be) paid.

Request for examination in an admissiste non-EPO language (see Violes III, 6.2)

4. Requêto en examen
Il eat demandé que soit examinée
la demande de brevet conformément
à l'art. 94 CBE II est (a été, sera)
procédé au palement de la taxe
d'examen.

Requête en examen dans une langue non officielle eutorisée (voir notice ll', 6-2) :

Abschriften
 Zusätzliche Abschrift(en) der im
 ergänzenden europäischen
 Recherchenbericht angeführten
 Schriftstücke wird (worden)
 beantragt.

Anzani der zusätzlichen Sätze von Abschriften

Copies
 Additional copy (copies) of the documents cited in the supplementary European search report is (arc) requested.

Number of additional sets of copies

5. Copics Prière de fournir une ou plusieurs copie supplémentaire des documents cités dans le rapport compléments re de recharche européanne.

Nombre de jeux supplémentaires de copies

6. Für das Verfahren vor dem EPA bestimmte Unterlagen

 Documents intended for procoolings before the EPO 6. Pièces destinées à la procédure devant l'OEB

6.1 Dem Verfahren vor dem EPA als Bestimmungsamt (PCT I) sind folgende Unterlagen zugrunde zu legen:

> d.s vom Internationalen Büre ver öffentlichten Anmeldungsunterlagen (mit allen Ansprüchen, Beschreibung und Zeichnungen), gegebenenfalle mit den geänderten Ansprüchen nach Art. 19 PCT

soweit sie nicht ersatzt werden durch die in drai Stücken beigefügten Änderungen.

Fans noting, sind Klatetollungen auf einem Zusatzblatt einzureichen!

6.1 Proceedings before the EPO as designated Office (PCT I) are to be

the application documents published by the International Bureau (with all claims, description and drawings), where applicable with amended claims under Art. 19 PCT

based on the following documents:

unless replaced by the amendments enclosed in triplicate.

Where recessery, clarifications must be submitted on a separate sheet! 6.1 La procédura devant l'OEB agissant en qualité d'office désigné (PCT I) co :

sa fonder sur les pièces suivantes :

los pièces de la demande publiée par la Bureau international (avec toutes les revendications, la descriction et les dessins), éventuellement avec les revendications modifiées conformément à l'article 19 du PCT

dans la mazura où ellea ne sont esa remplacées par les modifications jointes on trois exemplaires.

Le cas échésti, des explications doivent être jointes sur une fauille additionnelle!

6.2 Dem Verfahren vor dem EPA als ausgewähltem Amt (PCT II) sind folgende Unterlagen zugrunde zu legen:

> die dem internationalen vorläufigen Prüfungsbericht zugrunde gelegten Unterlagen, einschließlich seiner eventueiten Anlagen (Solche Anlagen müssen immer in drei Stücken beigefügt werden)

solvelt sie nicht ersetzt werden durch die in drei Stücken beigelügt≘n Änderungen.

Falls nötig, sind Klarstellungen auf altem Zusatzblatt einzureichen!

Sind dem EPA als mit der internationalen vorläufigen Prüfung beauftragten Behörde Versuchsberichte augegangen, dürfen diese dem Vorfahren vor dem EPA zugrunde gelegt 6.2 Proceedings before the EPO as cleeted Office (PCT II) are to be based on the following documents:

the documents on which the international preliminary examination report is based, including its possible annexes (Such enexes must clivays be filed in tribicate)

unless replaced by the amendments enclosed in triplicate.

where necessary, clarifications must be submitted on a separate shoet!

If the EPO as International Preliminary Examining Authority has received test reports, these may be used as the basis of proceedings before the EPO

6.2 La procédure dévant l'OE8 agissant en qualité d'office élu (PCT II) de : se fonder sur les pièces suivantes

les pièces sur lesquelles se fonde le rapport d'examen préliminaire international, y compris ces annexes éventuelles (De telles entrares sont toujours : joindre en trois exemplaires)

dens la mesure où elles ne son: pas rempiscées par les modifications jointes en trois examplaires.

Le cas echeant, des explications divivent être jointes sur une feuil : additionnelle

S: l'OEB, agiazant en qualité d'administration chargée de l'exame préliminaire international, a reçu def rapports d'essats, ceux-ci peuvent constituer la base de la procédura devant l'OES

 $\boxtimes$ 

 $\boxtimes$ 

werden.

|   | ——————————————————————————————————————   | <del></del>  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
|   | <ol> <li>Übersetzungen<br/>Beigefügt sind die nachfolgend<br/>angekreuzten Übersetzungen in einer<br/>der Amtssprachen des EPA (Dautsch,<br/>Enolisch, Französisch):</li> </ol>  | 7. Translations Translations in one of the official languages of the EPO (English, French, German) are enclosed as crossed below:  | 7. Traductions Vous trouverez, ci-joint, los traductions cochées ci-après dans l'une des langues officielles de l'Oss fallemand, anglais, français):   |
|   | <ul> <li>Im Varlahren vor dem EPA als<br/>Bestimmungsamt oder<br/>ausgewähltem Amt (PCT   + II):</li> </ul>  | <ul> <li>In proceedings before the EPO<br/>as designated or elected Office<br/>(PCT I + II):</li> </ul>  | <ul> <li>Dans la procédure devant l'OSE<br/>agissant en qualité d'office<br/>désigné ou élu (PCT I + II):</li> </ul>   |
|   | Übersetzung der ursprünglich eingereichten internationalen Anmeldung (Beschreibung, Ansprüche, etwaige Textbestandteile in den Zeichnungen), der veröffentlichten Zusammenfaszung, und etwaiger Angaben über Mikroorganismen nach Rogel 13**.3 und 13**.4 PCT, in drei Stücken | Translation of the international application (description, claims, any text in the drawings) as originally filed, of the abstract as published and of any indication under Rule 1313 and 1311.4 PCT regarding micro-organisms, in triplicate                               | Traduction de la demande Internationale telle que déposée initialement (description, revend : tions, textes figurant éventuellement dans les dessins), de l'abrèce publié, et de toutes indications visées aux règies 13°1.3 et 13°1.4 du PCT concernant les microorganismes, en trois exemplaires |
|   | Übersetzung der<br>prioritätsbegründenden<br>Anmeldung(en), in einem Stück   | Translation of the priority application(s), in one copy  | Traduction de la (des) demande!s'<br>ouvrant le droit de priorité, en<br>un exemplaire   |
|   | <ul> <li>Zusätzlich im Vorlahren vor dem<br/>EPA als Bestimmungsamt (PCT I):</li> </ul>  | <ul> <li>In addition, in proceedings before<br/>the EPO as designated Office<br/>(PCT I):</li> </ul>   | <ul> <li>De plus, dans la procédure devantion l'OEB agissant en quelité d'office désigne (FCT I):</li> </ul>   |
|   | Übersetzung der nach Art. 19 PCT<br>geänderten Ansprüche nebst<br>Erklarung, falls diese dem<br>Verfehren vor dem EPA zugrunde<br>gelegt werden sollen (siehe Fold<br>6), in drai Stücken  | Translation of amended claims and any statement under Art. 19 PCT, if the claims as amended are to form the basis for the proceedings before the EPO (see Section 6), in triplicate  | Traduction des revendications modifiées et de la déclaration faille conformément à l'article 19 du PCT si la procédure devant l'OEB doit être fondes aur les revendications modifiées (voir le rubrique 6), en trois exemplaires   |
|   | <ul> <li>Zusätzlich im Vorlahren vor dem<br/>EPA als ausgewähltem Amt<br/>(PCTP).</li> </ul>   | <ul> <li>In addition, in proceedings before<br/>the EPO as elected Office (PCT II);</li> </ul>   | De plus, dans la procédure devan; l'OEB agiseant en qualité d'office élu (PCT II) :  |
|   | Übersetzung der Anlagen zum internationalen vorläufigen Prüfungsbericht, in drei Stücken   | Translation of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report, in triplicate  | Traduction des annexes du rapport d'examen préliminaire international, en trois exemplaires  |
| 8 | Biologisches Material Die Erfindung bezieht sich auf bzw verwendet biologisches Material, das nach Rogel 23 EPU hinterlegt worden ist.   | Biological material     The invention relates to and/or uses biological material deposited under flule 26 EPC  | 8. Matière biologique<br>L'invention concerne et/ou utilise<br>la matière biologique, déposée<br>conformément à la règle 28 CBE.   |
|   | Die Angaben nach Regel 28(1) c) EPÜ (falls noch nicht bakannt, die Hinterlegungsstelle und des (die) Bezugsteichen (Nummer, Symbole usw) des Hinterlegers) sind in der niemationalen Veröffentlichung oder in der gemäß Fold 7 eingereichten Ubersetzung enthalten auf:        | The particulars referred to in Rule 28(1)(c) EPC (if not yet known, the depository institution and the identification reference(s) (number, symbols at a for the depositor) are given in the international publication or in the translation submitted under Section 7 on: | Les indications visées à la règle 28(1)c CBE (st pas encore connues l'autorité de dépôt et la (les) reference(s) d'identification (numéro : symboles etc.) du déposant) figurentians la publication internationale ou dens une traduction produite conformément a la rubrique 7 à la / au-         |
|   | Selta(n) / Zello(n)  | page(s) / line(s)  | იიფი(ა) / ჩფოი(ა)  |
|   |  |  |  |
|   | Die Empfangsbescheinigung(en)<br>der Hinterlegungsstelle   | The receipt(s) of deposit issued by the depository institution   | Lets) récépisse(s) de dépôt<br>delivrois) par l'autorité de dépôt  |
|   | ist (sind) beigefügt   | is (are) enclosed  | est (sont) jointist  |
|   | wird (werden) nachgereicht   | will be filed at a later date  | sera (seront) produktal ultérieureme   |
|   | Verzicht auf die Verpflichtung des<br>Antingkleifers nach Regel <b>28(3)</b> auf<br>geennachten Sahriftstück   | Waiver of the right to an undertaking from the requester pursuant to Rule 35/3) attached   | Renancistan, sur document disdir. (<br>a l'engagement du requérant au tille<br>de la règle 28(3)   |

Nucleotid- und Aminosäuresequenzen Die nach Regeln 5.2 und 13" PCT sowie Regsl 1045 (3a) EPÜ erforderlichen Unterlagen liegen dem EPA

> Das schriftliche Sequenzprotokoll witd enliegend in einer Amtssprache das EPA nachgardicht.

Das Sequenzprotokoll geht nicht über den Inhalt der Anmeldung in der ursprünglich eingereichten Fassung hinaus.

Der vorgsschriebene maschinenlesbare Datenträger ist beigefügt.

D a auf dam Datenträger gespelcharte information stimmt mit dem schriftlichen Sequenzprotokoll überein.

Nucleotide and amino acid sequences

The items necessary in accordance with Rules 5.2 and 13" PCT and Rule 1045 (3a) EPC have already been furnished to the EPO.

The written sequence listing is furnished herewith in an official language of the EPO.

The sequence listing does not include matter which goes beyond the content of the application as filad.

The prescribed machine-readable data carrier is enclosed.

The information recorded on the data carrier is identical to the writton sequence listing.

Séquences de nucléotides et d'acides aminés Les pièces requises selon les régies 5.2 et 13'" PCT et la règle 10c" (3.1) CBE ont de,à été déposées auprès de roes.

La liste de sequences écrite est produite ci-joint dans une des langues officielles de l'OEB.

La liste de séquences ne contient pas d'élements s'étendant au de a du contenu de la demande tello qu'elle a été déposée.

Le support de données prescrit. dochiffrable par mechine, est annexe

L'information figurant sur le support de données est identique à celle que contient la liste de séquences écrite.

10. Benennungsgebühren 10.1 Benennungsgebühren werden für nachsichende in der internationalen

Anmeldung bestimmte Vertragsstaaten des EPÜ entrichtet.

Schweiz und Liechtenstein

Osterreich

Belgien

Zypern "

Danemark

Spanien

Finnland

Irland

Italian

Мопесо

Portugal

Schweden

Frankraich

Griechenland

Lusensburg

Niederlande

Vereinigtas Königreich

Deutschland

AT

55

CY

DE

D۲

ES

FΙ

FR

GB

GR

15

IT

LU

M/C

 $R^{\perp}$ 

PT

SE

CH/LI

NA NEW YORK NEW YORK

Designation fees

10.1 Dasignation fees are paid in respect of the following EPC Contracting States designated in the international application for a European patent;

Austria

Belgium

Switzerland and Liechtenstein

Cyprus ]: Germany

Denmark

Spain

Finland

France

United Kingdom

Groece Ireland Italy

Luxenhbourg Moneco

Netherlands

Portuga:

Sweden

10. Taxes de désignation

10.1 Les taxes de désignation sont acquittées pour ceux des Etets contractants de la CBE désignés dans la demande internationale qu sont indiqués ci-après:

Autriche

Belgique

Suisse a: Liechtenstein

Chypra :

Allomagna

Danamark

Espagne

Finlende France

Royaume-Uni

Grèce

Irlanda

Italie

Luvembolia

Monaco

Fays-Bas

Portugal

Suède

19.2 Dense tilet micht bestsichtigt, Bener-Luigsgeburgen (L. den Feld 19.1 n cht angekreusten, aber in der internationalen Anmaldung bastimmten Vertragsstaaten des EPÜ zu entrichten. Insoweit wird auf die Zustellung einer Mittellung nach Pagal 882(1) EPU varzichtet. Safern diele Benennungsgebühren nicht bis zum Anfauf der in Regel 85:(2) EPÜ vorgasehanen Nachfrist entrichtet werden, wird beantragt, von einer Mitte lung hach Regel 63(1) EPÜ abzuschen.

10.2 At present it is not intended to pay usuignation fees for the ENC Contracting States not marked with a cross under 10.1 but designated in the international application. No communication under Rule 85±(1) EPC in respect of these designation fees need be notified. If they have not been paid by the time the period of grace allowed in Rule 35a(2) EPC expires, it is requested that no continualication be sent under Rule 69.1) EPC

10 Z i' piest das actualientent envisege ರ ನರವು ಚಿತ್ರ ಸಿಲ್ಲ ಕರ್ಮಕ್ಕೆ ಲೆಕ್ಕ ರಲ್ಪಿಸಲ್ಪಾಗಿನ್ನು pour les États contractants de la CEE qui ne sont pas cochés sous la rebrique 10.1, mais qui sont designés dans la demande internationale. Le demande l' renonce ainsi à la notification prévué à la règie 655isil / CBS. Si des taxes de désignation ne sont pas acquittées à l'expiration du délai suppléments re prévu à la règle SSbis(2) CBE, il est damande de s'abstenir d'envoyer une notification, établie conformément à 3 règle 62(1) CZE.

- Much by on rais in periodernationaten Anniek dung vill advintionhipsmill. April 1908 continuit.
- vitrge, lierer für bie Eintrabung wie terer Vortrabsstamme and EPU für die sei PCT oder des EPÚ. abin bruck ogung dieses Formulatis in Marc (19). ur a de in avil espernar ensien Alan e dung far eils control consist fations sectioned content

- Only passible if beginnated in the interretional epplication on at 91ter 1 April 1898.
- Space for one other EPC Contracting States which muliteleme for or the Contrasting States after this form this open princed and which wate designated for a European patent in the miurrations one eater
- Solioment dose a e, e designee dons to pen a to nternationalo au 11 auril 1885 pu apres cette a ri
- Presu cour natration d'autres Esca echtratium de la CBB a l'again desquels le PCT du la CBB entreta era a gueur spres Ampression bu brutik formula to on a wight ore dosignes gans la et non de innernar er ale cour un brever eur un

.... ---- 1. 20/20

|               | y 11 | Patents Diese Anmeldung gilt auch els Erstreckungsantrag hinsichtlich aller in der internationalen Anmaldung be- stimmten Nicht-Vertragssteaten des EPÜ. mit denen bei Einreichung der internationalen Anmeldung »Erstrek- kungsabkommen« in Kraft weren". Die Erstreckung wird jedoch nur wirksam, wenn die vorgeschriebene Erstreckungsgebühr entrichtet wird. Der Anmelder beebsichtigt, die Erstreckungsgebühr für die nachfol- gend angekrouzten Steaten zu entrichten: | 11  | This application is also considered as being a request for extension to all the non-Contracting Status to the EPC designated in the International application with which "extension agreements" were in force on the date of filing the international application. However, the extension only takes effect if the prescribed extension fee is paid. The applicant intends to pay the extension fee for the States marked with a cross below: | 11.         | Extension des effets du brevet européen La présente demande est également réputes demands d'extension à tous la Etats non contractants de la CBE désignes dans la demande internationale, avec locquels existaient, lors du depôt de la demande, des «accorat d'extension». Toutelois, l'extension ne produit ses effets que si la taxe d'extension prescrite est acquittée. Le demandaur se propose actuellement d'acquitter la taxe d'extension pour les Etats dont le nom est coché chapres. |
|---------------|------|--|-----|---|-------------|---|
|               |      | T Litauen (* ab 5 Juli 1994)   |     | Slovenic (* as of 1 March 1994) Lithuania (* as of 5 July 1994) Latvia (* as of 1 May 1995) Albania (* as of 1 February 1996) Romania (* as of 15 October 1996) Former Yugoslav Republic of   |             | Stovenia (* à compter du 1º mars 1992<br>Lituania (* à compter du 5 juillet 1992<br>Lettonia (* à compter du 1º mai 1993<br>Albania (* à compter du 1º février 1993<br>Roumania (* à compter du 15 octobre 1993<br>Ex-Republique yougoslave de Macédoir :   |
|               | ] _  | Mazedonich (* ab 1 November 198  | )7i | Macedonia (* as of 1 November 1997)   |             | 1° à compter du 1° novembre 1997)   |
|               | 1.   | Plate für Staaten, mit dener «Erstreckungsab-<br>kommoni nach Drucklegung diesex Formblatte<br>in Kroft traton und die in der atternationalen<br>Anmoldung bostrormt wieren  | ì.  | Space for States with which "extension agree-<br>mental" enter into force after this form has been<br>printed and which were designated in the interna-<br>tional application.  | 11          | Pré-u pour des Etats à l'égard desquels des<br>nateords d'extension - innerent en vigueur agné.<br>l'impression du présent formulaire et qui ont été<br>désignés dans le dentai de internationale.  |
|               | 12.  | Automatischer Abbuchungsauftrag (Nur möglich für Inhaber von beim EPA geführten laufenden Konten)  Das EPA wird besuftragt, nach Maßgabe der Vorschriften über das automatische Abbuchungsverfahren fallige Gebühren und Auslagen vom untenstehenden laufenden Konto abzubuchen.   | 12. | Automatic debit order Ifor EPO deposit account holders only!  The EPO is hereby authorised, under the Arrangements for the automatic debiting procedure, to debit from the deposit account below any fees and costs falling due.  | 12.         | Ordra de prélèvement automatique (uniquement possible pour les titulaires de comptes courants ouverts auprès de l'OEB) Par la présente, il est demandé à l'OEB de prélèver du compte courant chéasous les taxes et frais venant à échéance, conformément à la réglementation relative au prélèvement autometique.   |
|               |      | Nummer des laufenden Kontos /<br>Name des Kontoinhabers  |     | Deposit account number / Account holder's name  28 05 03 16 Huntsman  | Sur         | No du compte courant / Nom du titulaira du compte face Sciences UK Limited  |
|               | 13.  | Eventuelle Rückzahlungen auf das<br>beim EPA geführte laulende Konto<br>Numme:   | 13  | Reimbursement, If any, to EPO   | 13.         | Remboursements éventuels à effectuer sur le compte courant ouvert auprès de l'OEB numéro  |
|               |      | Nome des Konto magers  |     | Account holyer's name   |             | Nont du titulaire du compte   |
| <del></del> , | 14.  | Unterschriftlen) des (der)<br>Anmeider(s) oder Vertreters  | 14. | Signature(s) of applicant(s) or representative  | <del></del> | Signature(s) du (des) demandeus(s) ou du mandataire   |
|               |      | Ort / Datum  |     | ROGER GORDON MADGWICK SA<br>Oldbury, ENGLAND on 5 D   | VID         |   |
|               |      | Ft)r Angestellte (Art. 133(3) EPÜ)<br>mit allgemeiner Vollmacht:   |     | For employees (Art. 133(3) EPC) having a general authorisation: NoGA_43702  |             | Pour les employés (art. 133(3) CEE)<br>disposant d'un pouvoir général :   |
|               |      | Promocor des reservators su consisten billio mot<br>Remo to masor con micro de con Der juristischen<br>Per monde de sum die Schilling des Iden Unter-<br>construction de la commission des satisficients agen  |     | Property to nonnect under arguniturefal, in the grant of legal policies, the position of the agreement should also be supply.   |             | Neuriteu faire regione i di nom dattylographico o<br>14 signitude i di centran dos grie une personna<br>neuro di puto faire di tro dattylographico i<br>priorità i documenti il le dignatare Bulsan di<br>necroto   |



Huntsman Surface Sciences UX Limited

P O Box 3 210 - 222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B58 0NN

Telephone +44 (0) 121 429 6700 Factimile +44 (0) 121 420 5700

Date August 14, 2001

Direct Tel +44 (0) 121 420 5430

Direct Fax +44 (0) 121 420 5437

Your Ref

Our Ref ASSIGNMENTS

### REGISTERED POST

European Patent Office Erhardtstrasse 27 D-80298 Munich GERMANY

Dear Sirs

ASSIGNMENT OF PATENT APPLICATIONS IN THE EPO & PCT FROM RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TO HUNTSMAN INTERNATIONAL LLC

I enclose herewith a Certified Copy of the Patent Assignment containing the EPO and PCT Applications, which have been assigned, to Huntsman International LLC; these have the Country Codes of "WO" and "EP".

I also enclose a copy of the Power of Attorney authorising the undersigned representative to file these papers on behalf Huntsman International LLC.

If you require any further information or documentation please do not hesitate to let me know.

You's faithfull

For and on behalf of

Huntsman International LLC

RGMSAVIDGE

AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE (GA 43702)

Enc.



P.B.5818 - Palentiaen 2 2280 HV Rijswijk (ZH) 3 +31 70 340 2040 31651 epo ni +31 70 840 2016

Europäisches Patentamt

Elngangs

European Patent Office

Receiving Section

Office européen des brevets

2001

Section de

SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited 210-222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B68 ONN

GRANDE BRETAGNE

Wille

Datum/Date

02/01/01

Zeichen/Ref./Réf.

MPD BIS

Anneldung Nr. Application No. Domando nº Patent Nr. I Patent No. Brovet nº.

00945731.8-

-PCT/EP0005341

Anmelder/Applicant/Demandeur/Patentinhaber/Proprietor/Tibilging

RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED trading as ALB

### ENTRY INTO THE EUROPEAN PHASE BEFORE THE EUROPEAN PATENT OFFICE

NOTE: These notes describes the procedural steps required for entry into the European phase before the European Patent Office (EPO). You are advised to read them carefully; failure to take the necessary action in time can lead to your application being deemed withdrawn.

- 600 1. European patent application no. 00945731.8 has been allotted to the REGIONAL above-mentioned international patent application. BY
- 10 DECOMBE 2. Applicants WITHOUT a residence or their principal place of of business within the territory of an EPC Contracting State may themselves initiate European processing of their international application, provided they do so before expiry of the 21st or 31st month from the the priority date (see also point 7 below).

During the European phase before the EPO as designated or elected Office, however, such applicants must be represented by a proprofessional representative (Articles 133(2) and 134(7) EPC).

Procedural acts performed after expiry of the 21st or 31st month by a professional representative who acted during the international phase but is not suthorised to act before the EPO have no legal effect and therefore lead to loss of rights.

Please note that a professional representative authorised to act before the EPO and who acted for the applicant during the international phase does not automatically become the representative for the European phase. Applicants therefore strongly advised to appoint in good time any representative they wish to initiate the European phase for them; otherwise, the EPO has to send all communications direct to the applicant.



- 3. Applicants WITH a residence or their principal place of business within the territory of an EPC Contractin State are not obliged to appoint a professional representative authorised to act before the EPO for the European phase before the EPO as a designated or elected Office.

  However, in view of the complexity of the procedure it is recommended that they do so.
- 4. Applicants and professional representatives are strongly advised to initiate the European phase using EPO Form 1200 (available free of charge from the EPO). This however is not compulsory.
- 5. TO ENTER THE EUROPEAN PHASE BEFORE THE EPO, the following acts must be performed. (NB: Failure validly to do so will entail loss of rights or other adverse legal consequences).
  - 5.1 If the EPO acting as DESIGNATED OFFICE under Article 22(1) PCT, applicants must, within 21 months from the date of filing or (where applicable) the earliest priority date:
    - a) Supply a translation of the international application into an EPO official language, if the International Bureau did not publish the application in such a language (Article 22(1) PCT and Rule 107(1)a) EPC).

      If the translation is not filed in due time, the international application is deemed to be withdrawn before the EPO (Article 24(1)(iii) PCT).
    - b) Pay the national basic fee and, where a supplementary European search report has to be drawn up, the search fee (Rule 107(1)c) and e) EPC).
    - c) Within six months from publication of the international search report, pay a designation fee for each designated Contracting State (Rule 107(1)d) EPC), and file a written request for examination and pay the examination fee (Rule 107(1)f) EPC).

| Anmeldung Nr./Application No./Demands n'.//Petent Nr./Potent No./Brovet n'. | Blatt/Fage/Feuille |
|---|--------------------|
| 00945731.8  | 2                  |



- 5.2 If the EPO is acting as ELECTED OFFICE under Article 39(1)a) PCT, applicants must, within 31 months from the date of filing or (where applicable) the earliest priority date:
  - a) File a translation as per 5.1 a) above.
  - b) Pay the fees as per 5.1 b) above.
  - c) If the time limit under Article 79(2) EPC expires before the 31-month time limit, pay the designation fee for each designated Contracting State (Rule 107(1)d) EPC).
  - d) If the time limit under Article 94(2) EPC expires before the 31-month time limit, file the written request for examination A N D pay the examination fee (Rule 107(1)f) EPC).
  - e) Pay the renewal fee for the third year, if it falls due before the expiry of the 21-month time limit (Rule 107(1)g) EPC)
- 5.3 If the application documents on which the European grant procedure is to be based comprise more then ten claims, a claims fee is payable within the time limit under Rule 107(1) EPC for the eleventh and each subsequent claim (Rule 110(1) EPC). The fee can however still be paid within a period of grace of one month from notification of an EPO communication (Rule 110(2) EPC).
- 6. If the necessary fees are not paid in time, they may still be validly paid within a period of grace of one month from notification of an EPO communication, subject to payment at the same time of a surcharge for each late-paid fee (Rule 85a(1), 85b EPC). For the renewal fee, the period of grace is six months from the fee's due date (Article 86(2) EPC).
- 7. If the applicant had a representative during the application's international phase, the present notes will be sent to the representative, asking him to inform the applicant accordingly.

All subsequent communications will be sent to the applicant, or - if the KPO is informed of his appointment in time - to the applicants's European representative.

| Anneldung Nr./Application No./Demande n°.//Patent Nr./Patent No./Brovet n°. | Bist/Page/reuille |
|---|-------------------|
| 00945731.8  | 3                 |



8. For more details about time limits and procedural acts before the EPO as designat d and elected Office, see the EPO brochure

How to get a European patent Guide for applicants - Part 2 PCT procedure before the EPO - "EURO-PCT"

This brochure, the list of professional representatives before the EPO, Form 1200 and the latest fees are all on the internet under

http://www.european-patent-office.org.

RECEIVING SECTION

Anneldung Nr./Application No./Domande nº //Patent Nr./Patent No./Brovet nº.

00945731.8

\_



1. 40/40

Huntsman Surface Sciences UK Limited

P O Box 9792 210 - 222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B68 0WA

Telephone +44 (0) 121 429 6700 Facsimile +44 (0) 121 420 5700

### **HUNTSMAN SURFACE SCIENCES UK LIMITED** CHANGE OF DETAILS FROM 1 MARCH 2002

Dear Sirs

You will be aware that our postal address recently changed to :

PO Box 9792 210-222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands **B68 0WA** GREAT BRITAIN

If you have not yet implemented this change we would be grateful if you could update your records as soon as possible.

We would also inform you that with effect from 1 March 2002 our new telephone, and fax numbers will be as follows:

Main switchboard:

+44 121 420 5812

Direct Lines: Mr R G M Savidge +44 121 420 5868

Mrs S M Stevenson +44 121 420 5864

+44 121 420 5802

Direct Fax:

+44 121 420 5806

We would be grateful if you would use our direct lines whenever possible.

Yours faithfully For and on behalf of Huntsman Surface Sciences UK Limited

MRS S M STEVENSON

PATENTS & TRADEMARKS ADMINISTRATOR

## Exhibit 5



Huntsman Surface Sciences UK Limited

P O Box 9761 210 - 222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B&9 4XB

Telephone +44 (0) 121 429 6700 Facimile +44 (0) 121 420 5700

Date January 30, 2002

Direct Tel +44 (0) 121 420 5431

Direct Fax +44 (0) 121 420 5437

Your Ref 2484658/mjc
Our Ref MPD315/AU/
RGMS/SMSL1

VIA FAX --CONFIRMATION BY POST

Davies Collison Cave 1 Little Collins Street Melbourne, Victoria AUSTRALIA 3000

Dear Sirs

AUSTRALIAN PATENT APPLICATION NO. 59716/00 "PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS"

I enclose the Report, as requested and confirm that no amendments have been made. The Applicant acquired its title form the first inventor by operation of UK law regarding the nature of his employment by the Applicant. I have asked the second Applicant to provide relevant details in respect of the second and third inventors.

Yours faithfully
For and on behalf of
Huntsman Surface Sciences UK Limited

R G M SAVIDGE

MANAGER, PATENTS & TRADMEARKS GROUP

Enc.

1:lhe

by fax and post ... ERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINING AUTHORITY

SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited 210-222 Hagley Road West

Oldbury

West Midlands B68 ONN

GRANDE BRETAGNE

NOTIFICATION OF TRANSMITTAL OF THE INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY **EXAMINATION REPORT** 

(PCT Rule 71.1)

Date of mailing (day/month/year)

10.10.01

Applicant's or agent's file reference MPD315/PCT/RGMS

EL Middle

IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION

International application No. PCT/EP00/05341

International filling date (day/month/year) 09/06/2000

Priority date (day/month/year) 10/06/1999

Applicant

PHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TRADING ... et

- 1. The applicant is hereby notified that this International Preliminary Examining Authority transmits herewith the international preliminary examination report and its annexes, if any, established on the international application.
- 2. A copy of the report and its annexes, if any, is being transmitted to the International Bureau for communication to all the elected Offices.
- 3. Where required by any of the elected Offices, the International Bureau will prepare an English translation of the report (but not of any annexes) and will transmit such translation to those Offices.

#### 4. REMINDER

The applicant must enter the national phase before each elected Office by performing certain acts (filing translations and paying national fees) within 30 months from the priority date (or later in some Offices) (Article 39(1)) (see also the reminder sent by the International Bureau with Form PCT/IB/301).

Where a translation of the international application must be furnished to an elected Office, that translation must contain a translation of any annexes to the international preliminary examination report. It is the applicant's responsibility to prepare and furnish such translation directly to each elected Office concerned.

For further details on the applicable time limits and requirements of the elected Offices, see Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

Name and mailing address of the IPEA/

European Patent Office D-80293 Munich

Tcl. +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 523656 epmu d

Fax: 449 83 2300 - 4465

Authorized officer

Hutterer, G

Tel.+49 89 2399-6066



## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

## PCT

## INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

| Applicant's or ac   | gent's file reference  | T  |                             |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|-----------------------------|--|--|--|
| MPD315/PCT/RGMS   |  | FOR FURTHER ACT  | ION See Notifi<br>Prelimina | ication of Transmittal of International<br>ry Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/410)   |  |  |
| International app   | dication No.   | International filing date (da                            | /month/year)                | Priority date (day/month/year)   |  |  |
| PCT/EP00/0  | 5341 ·   | 09/06/2000   |                             | 10/06/1999   |  |  |
| International Pat A61K7/00  Applicant   | ent Classification (IPC) or nat  | tional classification and IPC                            |                             |  |  |  |
| RHODIA COI  | NSUMER SPECIALTIES   | S LIMITED TRADING  | et                          |  |  |  |
| 1. This intern<br>and is tran   | ational preliminary exami<br>smitted to the applicant as                           | nation report has been proceeding to Article 36.         | pared by this Int           | ernational Preliminary Examining Authority   |  |  |
| 2. This REPO  | ORT consists of a total of   | 5 sheets, Including this co                              | ver sheet.                  |  |  |  |
| haon a  | eport is also accompanied<br>rnonded and are the basi-<br>ule 70.15 and Section 60 | s for this report and/or ch                              | colo containing re          | on, claims and/or drawings which have satifications made before this Authority ne PCT).  |  |  |
| These ann   | exes consist of a total of s   | sheets.  |                             |  |  |  |
| 3. This report  | contains Indications relati  | ng to the following items:                               |                             |  |  |  |
| ı 🛱   | Basis of the report  |  |                             |  |  |  |
| 11 🗆  | Priority   |  |                             |  |  |  |
| III 🗆   | Non-establishment of opi   | inion with regard to novel                               | y, inventive stop           | and industrial applicability   |  |  |
| iv 🗆  | Lack of unity of invention   |  | ,                           |  |  |  |
| <b>∨</b> 🖄  | Reasoned statement und citations and explanation                                   | ler Article 35(2) with regal<br>s suporting such stateme | 'd to novalty, inve<br>nt   | entive step or industrial applicability;   |  |  |
|   | Cartain documents sited  |  |                             |  |  |  |
| VII 🔲   | Certain defects in the inte  | • •  |                             |  |  |  |
| VIII 🛚  | VIII 🖾 Certain observations on the international application                       |  |                             |  |  |  |
| Date of submission  | of the demand  | Da   | te of complation of t       | his raport   |  |  |
| 27/12/2000  |  |  | 1 0. 10. 01                 |  |  |  |
| proliminary examin  |  | Λυ   | harized officer             | and the state of t |  |  |
| European Palent Office<br>D-80298 Munich<br>Tel. +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 523656 epmu d<br>Fax: +49 89 2399 - 4465 |  |  | agetter, M                  | 2300 8719  |  |  |

## EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/EP00/05341

| 1  | . В   | asis of the report   |   |  |  |  |
|----|---|--|---|--|--|--|
| 7  | <ol> <li>With regard to the elements of the international application (Replacement sheets which have been further receiving Office in response to an invitation under Article 14 are referred to in this report as "origin and are not annexed to this report since they do not contain amendments (Rules 70.16 and 70.17)):     Description, pages:</li> </ol> |  |   |  |  |  |
|    | 1.  | -25  | as originally filed   |  |  |  |
|    | C   | laims, No.:  |   |  |  |  |
|    | 1-  | 5  | as originally filed   |  |  |  |
|    |   |  | <b>₹</b> ;  |  |  |  |
| 2  | . Wi  | ith regard to the lang<br>nguage in which the I  | uage, all the elements marked above were available or furnished to this Authority in the nternational application was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this ilem.  |  |  |  |
|    | Th  | ese elements were a  | vailable or furnished to this Authority in the following language: , which is:  |  |  |  |
| 3. | Winte   | the language of put the language of a t 55.2 and/or 55.3). It regard to any nucle rnational preliminary contained in the intelled together with the contained of the contained o | ranslation furnished for the purposes of the international search (uncler Rule 23.1(b)). blication of the international application (under Rule 48.3(b)). ranslation furnished for the purposes of international preliminary examination (under Rule equals application) and application, the examination was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:  ernational application in written form. the international application in computer readable form. |  |  |  |
|    |   | furnished subseque<br>The statement that<br>the international ap   | ently to this Authority in computer readable form.  the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in plication as filed has been furnished.  the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence  |  |  |  |
| 4. | The   | e amendments have i  | resulted in the cancellation of:  |  |  |  |
|    |   | the description,<br>the claims,<br>the drawings,   | pages: Nos.: sheets:  |  |  |  |
| 5. |   | This report has been considered to go be   | n established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been youd the disclosure as filed (Rule 70.2(c)):   |  |  |  |

Form PCT/PEN/409 (Boxes I-VIII, Sheet 1) (July 1998)

## TERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/EP00/05341

(Any replacement sheet containing such amendments must be referred to under item 1 and annexed to this report.)

- 6. Additional observations, if necessary:
- V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability: citations and explanations supporting such statement
- 1. Statement

Novelty (N)

Yes:

Claims

No:

Claims 1-5

Inventive step (IS)

Yes:

Claims

Claims

-

No: Claims 1-5

Industrial applicability (IA)

Үез:

Claims 1-5

No:

2. Citations and explanations use separate cheet

VIII. Certain observations on the international application

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made: see separate sheet

### Re Item V

Reasoned statement under Article 35 (2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement

- 1. Reference is made to the following documents:
  - D1: DE 14 67 825 A (CHESEBROUGH\_PONDS INC.) 2 January 1969 (1969-01-02)
- 2.1. The subject-matter of present claim 1 is not new according to Article 33(2) PCT. Document D1 already describes compositions comprising water, mineral oil, oil soluble surfactants and hydrophilic surfactants.

The compositions of D1 are described as transparent mineral oil-water-gels. The main use of these gels is as a "Frisiermittel".

The subject-matter of claim 1 cannot be clearly delimited from the compositions described in D1. See also the PCT-Guidelines III-4.8.

Example 1 discloses a composition comprising 20% mineral oil, 15% surfactant with an HLB value of between 12.7 and 15.0, 10% surfactant with an HLB value of between 1.6 and 7.6. The ratio of oil to oil soluble surfactant is 2:1, the ratio of oils soluble to hydrophilic surfactant is 1:1.5.

It is stated that 60°C lies just above the I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature.

- 2.2. With regard to dependent claims 2-4 it is noted that a positive opinion can only be given, if dependent claims refer to independent claims that meet the requirements of the PCT.
- 3. The subject-matter of present claim 5 is not new according to Article 33(2) PCT. Document D1 describes a method for preparing compositions according to present claim 1 wherein mineral oil and the oil soluble surfactant are mixed and then a mixture of water and the hydrophilic surfactant is added. Water is added after the resulting mixture has been heated to a temperature above the "Gelpunkt" which is the l<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature. A cooling step is implicit. (p.10, 3rd paragraph p.11, 2nd paragraph).

### Re Item VIII

Certain observations on the international application

- The subject-matter of present claim 1 is not clear (Article 6 PCT). 1.
- 1.1. The expression: "a proportion ..... based on the weight of ..." is not clear. Present claim 1 has been read as defining:
  - a) a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 of oil to oil soluble surfactant; and
  - b) a proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 of oil soluble surfactant to hydrophilic surfactant.

This interpretation of claim 1 is based on p.11, 3rd paragraph.

- 1.2. The statement "adapted to form an  $I_1$  phase having  $I_1/L_1$  transition temperature greater than 25°C is not clear. Either the compounds comprised in the composition result in a composition with the defined effect, or an essential feature defining the claimed composition is missing.
  - At present, all compositions comprising the defined compounds in the described proportions are considered to be relevant.

# Exhibit 6

SMART & BI

FES 25 2172

To Fax No.:

732-524-2808

Page 1 of:

1

Attention:

Paula Hein

From:

Ron Ziola

Your file No .:

see below

Reply to Ottawa file no.:

77414-103

Milkot

Ottawa, Canada K1P 5Y6
Tel.: (613) 232-2486

55 Metcalfe Street, Suite 900

P.O. Box 2999, Station D

Fax: (613) 232-8440

Date: February 25, 2003

Time:

Johnson & Johnson International Patent Law Division P.O. Box 1222 New Brunswick, New Jersey 05 903

Dear Madam:

U.S.A.

Re:

Proposed Entry of Canadian National Phase of

PCT International Application Serial No. PCT /EP00/05341

RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED TRADING AS

ALBRIGHT & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES, INC.

Kevan Hatchman, et al. Your Ref: SPC0948

Thank you for your facsimile dated February 19, 2002.

The status of this case is that we are awaiting your instructions to proceed as per Sujata Barot..

Yours very truly

SMART & BIGGAR

Ron Ziola

RZ:srm

Applications Supervisor

If there are any transmission problems, please call (613) 232-2486.

Original copy and any enclosures

J will not

be sent by

☐ mail
☐ courier

The information contained in this menomication is confidential and only for the intended recipient identified above. If you are not the intended recipient, you are hereby notified that any dissemination or use of this communication is unlawful. If you have received this transmission in error, please immediately notify us by telephone (collect). Return the original message to us and retain no copy.

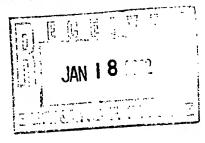
# Exhibit 7

## FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN, LANGER & CHICK, P.C. ATTORNEYS AT LAW

767 THIRD AVENUE, NEW YORK, N.Y. 10017-2023

LEONARD HOLTZ HERBERT GOODMAN THOMAS LANGER MARSHALL J. CHICK RICHARD S. BARTH DOUGLAS HOLTZ ROBERT P. MICHAL

OF COUNSEL: STEPHEN H. FRISHAUF RICHARD M. GOLDBERG



TELEPHONE: (212) 319-4900

FACSIMILES:

GROUP 3: (212) 319-5101 GROUP 4: (212) 644-4834

WILLIAM R. WOODWARD (1914-1994)

E-MAIL: MJCHICK@FHGLC.COM

## VIA FACSIMILE - 1-732-524-5824

Mr. Bernie Plantz JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES INC. One Johnson & Johnson Plaza New Brunswick, NJ 08933-7003

National Phase of PCT/EP00/05341

U.S. Serial No. 10/018,238

Kevan HATCHMAN/HUNTSMAN INTERNATIONAL LLC and

January 15, 2002

JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES INC.

MPD315/US/RGMS/SMSL4 Huntsman Ref .:

01795/HG Our Ref.

Dear Mr. Plantz:

I have left a number of telephone messages for you and other people at Johnson & Johnson; however, to date, I have no information for use in this matter. Apparently Huntsman International LLC and Johnson & Johnson Consumer Companies Inc. are to be the assignees of the subject application in the United The application has already been filed and has been granted a Serial No. 10/018,238. The next step requires a postfiled Declaration and Power of Attorney. Inventors from J&J are apparently Elvin LUKENBACH, Laura MCCULLOCH and Benjamin WIEGAND; at least these are the three inventors with United States In addition, it is usual to send an assignment for residences. signature at the same time. Finally, there is an issue as to where the invention was made. If it was made outside of the United States then there is no problem. If any part of the invention was made within the United States the facts should be considered and, if necessary, action taken so that a valid U.S. patent can issue.

We were originally referred to Erin Harriman, but she is apparently on medical leave. Her assistant Beth was able to provide me with some current addresses for the U.S. inventors.

- 1. Concerning where the invention was made, I had received a call from a Jim Tracey who had indicated that he would get back to me in December. I have not heard anything further from him and my attempts to call him were unsuccessful. The only listing was apparently at a company called Vistacon and when I called that number I was directed to another person (I did not leave a telephone message). It is a fairly serious matter to file for a patent outside the United States when an invention is made, even in part, within the United States unless an export license is obtained. If reasonably prompt action is taken and there is a reasonable explanation, a retroactive license can be obtained. Otherwise a patent cannot issue in the United States.
- 2. With respect to the Assignment, the only address that I have for Johnson & Johnson Consumer Companies Inc. is the same address that I have for Huntsman International LLC. I would like to confirm that address or obtain a correct address so that I can complete the Assignment document.
- 3. Finally, is there a contact person to whom I can send the Declaration and Assignment for execution by the U.S. inventors.

Your assistance in these matters is requested.

Very truly yours

Marshall J. Chick

MJC/ld

cc: Mr. Roger G.M. Savidge

# Exhibit 8

# FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN, LANGER & CHICK, P.C. ATTORNEYS AT LAW

767 THIRD AVENUE, NEW YORK, N.Y. 10017-2023

RECEIVED

FF3 07 2002

Woodcock Washburn Kurtz Mackiewicz & Norris LLP

TELEPHONE: (212) 319-4900

FACSIMILES:

GROUP 3: (212) 319-5101 GROUP 4: (212) 644-4834

WILLIAM R. WOODWARD

OF COUNSEL:

LEONARD HOLTZ

THOMAS LANGER MARSHALL J. CHICK

RICHARD S. BARTH DOUGLAS HOLTZ ROBERT P. MICHAL

HERBERT GOODMAN

STEPHEN H. FRISHAUF

VIA EXPRESS MAIL

E-MAIL: MJCHICK@FHGLC.COM

RICHARD M. GOLDBERG

February 6, 2002

Wendy A. Choi, Esq. Woodcock Washburn One Liberty Place, 46<sup>th</sup> Floor Philadelphia, PA 19103

Re: U.S. Serial No. 10/018,238

Kevan HATCHMAN, et al./HUNTSMAN INTERNATIONAL LLC and

JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER

COMPANIES INC.

Your Ref. : SPC-948 US J&J Ref. : JJ-0107

Huntsman's Ref.: MPD315/US/RGMS/SMSL4

Our Ref. : 01795/HG

Dear Wendy:

Referring to our telephone discussion earlier today, I am enclosing a copy of the subject application and of some citations which were sent to us by Roger Savidge.

There are no outstanding deadlines at this time (however see the numbered paragraphs below).

1. As I explained during our earlier telephone discussions, it appears that a retroactive foreign filing license must be obtained if a valid U.S. patent is to issue in this case. You had indicated that you were going to obtain a time line as to when the inventions were made and other facts. I assume that the responsibility for pursuing the retroactive license has been transferred to you along with the responsibility for the application. Petitioning the Patent Office for retroactive license under 37 CFR 5.25 should be done as quickly as possible after you are able to confirm that one is required.

February 6, 2002

- 2. No inventor declarations have been filed. there should be a requirement for such a declaration with a two month term received shortly. We will forward the requirement to you as soon as it is received. We assume that the power of attorney and address for such documents will be to you.
- 3. No assignment documents were filed. (We usually send them with the declaration to be signed at the same time).
- 4. Should you want to prepare declaration and assignment documents before the official requirement is made, please note that we confirmed the serial number with a telephone call to the Patent Office.

Very truly yours,

MJC/ld Encs.

Marshall J. Chick

# JB97 Rec'd PCT/PTO 0 7 DEC 2001 10/018238

RECEIPT ACKNOWLEDGED:

PCT National Phase Appln based on PCT/EP00/05341

Transmittal Letter Form PTO-1390 (in duplicate); Check No. 84229 for \$890.00; PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT; INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT, includ. FORM PTO-1449A; also enclosed: Copy of WO 00/76460 A2;Int'l. Search Report (PCT/ISA/210); PCT/IB/308; PCT/IB/304; REQUEST FOR PUBLICATION OF ASSIGNMENT INFORMATION; CHANGE OF CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS APPLN.

Due Date: December 10, 2001 - MJC/ld

01795/HG - HATCHMAN et al -"PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS"

Express Mail Label No. EL 874 117 723 US Date of Deposit: December 7, 2001

| FORM TOFOL 2 LEGISTRAN TOFOL (1002 VALUE VALUE)                              | DIMMERCE PATENT LIND TRADEMARK UFFICE   | TTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  | R TO THE UNITED STATES  | 01795/HG   |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | TED OFFICE (DO/EO/US)   | U.S. APPLICATION NO. (If known, see 37 CFR 1.5                                     |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | NG UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO.  | INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE   | PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED  |  |  |  |  |  |
| PCT/EP00/05341   | JUNE 9, 2000  | JUNE 10, 1999  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | L CARE FORMULATIONS   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | n HATCHMAN, Elvin LUKENBACH, I<br>amin WIEGAND  | Laura MCCULLOCH and  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Applicant herewith submits to the United S                                   | tates Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US)  | the following items and other information:   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1XX This is a FIRST submission of item                                       | ns concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | NT submission of items concerning a filing u  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3. This is an express request to begin items (5), (6), (9) and (21) indicate | national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 37 d below.                                  | 71(f)). The submission must include  |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | piration of 19 months from the priority date (A   | rticle 31).  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5. XX A copy of the International Applica                                    |   | 19   |  |  |  |  |  |
| b.  xx has been communicated b   | ed only if not communicated by the Internation<br>by the International Bureau.          | ial Bureau). (As WO 00/76460 A2)   |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | lication was filed in the United States Receiving                                       | ng Office (RO/US).   |  |  |  |  |  |
|  | the International Application as filed (35 U.S.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| a. is attached hereto.   |   | 5. 5 / 1(6)( <b>2</b> //   |  |  |  |  |  |
| b. has been previously subm  | nitted under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).   | i  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 7. Amendments to the claims of the In  | nernational Aplication under PCT Article 19 (2  | 35 U.S.C. 371(e)(3))   |  |  |  |  |  |
| a. 🔲 are attached hereto (requi  | a. are attached hereto (required only if not communicated by the International Bureau). |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| b. have been communicated  | by the International Bureau.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| c. have not been made; how   | ever, the time limit for making such amendme  | nts has NOT expired.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| d. have not been made and w  | vill not be made.   | 1  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8. An English language translation of  | the amendments to the claims under PCT Artic  | de 19 (35 U.S.C. 371 (c)(3)).  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 9. An oath or declaration of the invent                                      | or(s) (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4)).  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 10. An English lanugage translation of Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).     | the annexes of the International Preliminary Ex   | xamination Report under PCT  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Items 11 to 20 below concern documen   | t(s) or information included:   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 11. XX An Information Disclosure Statem                                      | ent under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 12. An assignment document for reco  | rding. A separate cover sheet in compliance w   | vith 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 13. A FIRST preliminary amendment  | <u>.</u>  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 14. A SECOND or SUBSEQUENT p   | reliminary amendment.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 15. A substitute specification.  |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 16. XX A change of power of attorney and                                     | D'or address letter.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 17. A computer-readable form of the  | sequence listing in accordance with PCT Rule  | 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.321 - 1.325.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 18. A second copy of the published in  | ternational application under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)  | (4).   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 19. A second copy of the English lang  | guage translation of the international application                                      | in under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 20. XX Other items or information:   |   | Express Mail Mailing Label   |  |  |  |  |  |
| (i) Copy of WO 00/76460 A2   |   | No.: EI, 874 117 723 US<br>Date of Deposit: December 7, 2001                       |  |  |  |  |  |
| <pre>(ii) PCT/ISA/210 (Search Rep<br/>(iii) PCT/IB/304 (Priorit</pre>        | ort)<br>V Document Sent)  | I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal  |  |  |  |  |  |
| (iv) PCT/IB/308 (Appln.  | sent to U.S.)   | Service Express Mail Post Office to<br>Addressee' service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the |  |  |  |  |  |
| (V) REQUEST FOR PUBLICAT   | ION OF ASSIGNMENT   | date indicated above and is addressed to the Asst. Commissioner for Patents.       |  |  |  |  |  |
| INFORMATION  |   | Wasmington, D.C. 10231   |  |  |  |  |  |

Larence Doores

|     | 0.3. APPELCATION NO. 674                      |  | PCT/EP00/05341  | 3.   |              | ATTORNEYS DE                 | OCCUTATIONS         |
|-----|---|--|---|--|--------------|------------------------------|---------------------|
|     | 21.XX The follo                               | owing fees are submitted:  | :   |  | CN           | 01795                        | PTO USE ONL         |
| į   | BASIC NATIONA                                 | AL FEE (37 CFR 1.492 (2  | (2) (1) - (5):  |  | <del> </del> | *C004110110                  | PIO USE UNL         |
|     | Neither international                         | onal preliminary examina<br>search fee (37 CFR 1.445<br>I Search Report not prepar | ation fee (37 CFR 1.482)                                      |  |              |                              |                     |
|     | International preti-                          | liminary examination for   | (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to<br>prepared by the EPO or JP(      | \$1040.00<br>to                            |              |                              |                     |
|     | International prelim                          | iminary examination for (  | (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to (2)(2)) paid to USPTO              |  |              |                              |                     |
|     | International preling<br>but all claims did n | iminary examination fee (<br>not satisfy provisions of P                           | (37 CFR 1.482) paid to U:<br>PCT Article 33(1)-(4)            | ISPTO S710.00                              |              |                              |                     |
|     | international prelin                          | iminary examination fee (isfied provisions of PCT A                                | (37 CFR 1.482) paid to US                                     | ISPTO                                      |              |                              |                     |
| +   | ENIE  | LR APPROPRIATE   | BASIC FEE AMOU  | UNT =                                      | 1 -          | 390.00                       |                     |
| L   | uom die ear                                   | ritest claimed priority date   | n or declaration later than<br>te (37 CFR 1.492(e)).          | ☐ 20 ☐ 30                                  | s            |                              |                     |
| 1   | CLAIMS  | NUMBER FILED   | NUMBER EXTRA  | RATE                                       | S            |                              |                     |
| _   | Total claims                                  | 6 - 20 =   | 0   | x \$18.00                                  | S            |                              | Т                   |
|     | independent claims                            | 1 -3 =   | 0   | x \$84.00                                  | 10           |                              |                     |
| -   | IULTIPLE DEPENI                               | DENT CLAIM(S) (if app  |   | + \$230.00                                 | S            |                              |                     |
| F   | - Andicare claim                              | TOTAL O  | OF ABOVE CALCUI   | LATIONE                                    | -            | 90.00                        | <del></del>         |
| L   | are reduced by 1                              | as small entity status. See  | e 37 CFR i.27. The fees in                                    | indicated above +                          | S .          |                              |                     |
| F   |   |  | SU  | RTOTAL -                                   | Soc          | 22.22                        |                     |
| 1 1 | rocessing fee of \$13 ionths from the earli   | 30.00 for furnishing the E liest claimed priority date                             | English translation later that (37 CFR 1.492(f)).             | an 20 30                                   | s            | 90_00_                       |                     |
| Ļ   |   |  | TOTAL NATION  | NAL FEE =                                  | \$ 0.0       |                              |                     |
| ac  | e for recording the companied by an ar        | enclosed assignment (37 ppropriate cover sheet (3'                                 | 7 CFR 1.21(h)). The assign 7 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40.00         |  | \$           | 90_00                        |                     |
| _   |   |  | TOTAL FEES EN   |  | \$ 89        | 20.00                        |                     |
|     |   |  |   |  | Amount       |                              | S                   |
|     |   |  |   |  | chs          |                              | S                   |
| a.  | . X A check in th                             | he amount of \$890.0   | 00 to cover the   | shove feet it enclose                      | ,            |                              |                     |
|     |   |  |   |  |              |                              |                     |
| ъ.  | A duplicate co                                | te my Deposit Account No<br>copy of this sheet is enclo                            | lo in th<br>osed.   | e amount of S                              | <del></del>  | to cover the a               | bove fees.          |
| C.  | XX The Commiss overpayment                    | sioner is hereby authorize   | zed to charge any additiona<br>. <u>06–1378</u> . A duplicate | il fees which may be                       | required     | L or credit any              | ,                   |
|     | Fees are to be                                | e charged to a credit card   | d WARNING Towns   | e copy of this sheet is                    | s enclose    | ed.                          |                     |
|     | information sl                                | hould not be included or   | d. WARNING: Information this form. Provide cred               | on on this form may lit card information a | become       | public. Creditorization on P | it card<br>TO-2038. |
| N(  |   |  |   |  |              | ,                            |                     |
|     |   | and the granted to   | nder 37 CFR 1.494 or 1.49<br>to restore the application t     | 15 has not been mey<br>to pending starys.  | a petiti     | ion to revive                | (37 CFR             |
|     | ND ALL CORRESPONT                             |  | •   | 111/                                       | . 11         | ///                          |                     |
| FF  | RISHAUF, HOLTZ                                | Z, GOODMAN LANGER  | & CHICK, P.C.   | SIGNATURE                                  | 11.4         | <u> </u>                     |                     |
| , 0 | ew York, NY 10                                | ue - 25th Floor  |   | _  |              | CUTOV                        |                     |
|     |   |  |   | MARSHAI<br>NAME                            | <u>ъ</u>     | CHICK                        |                     |
| Te  | el. No. (212)                                 | 319-4900   |   | 26,853                                     |              |                              |                     |
| Pa  | Ex No. (212)                                  | 319-5101   | 01933   |  |              |                              |                     |
| Da  | ate: Decemb                                   | ner 7 2001   | PATENT TRADEMARK OFFICE                                       | REGISTRATI                                 | ואטא אס.     | BER                          |                     |
|     |   | Jer 1, 2001  | _   |  |              |                              |                     |

Attorney Docket No. 01795/HG

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant(s): Kevan HATCHMAN et al.

Serial No. : To be assigned (U.S.

National Phase of PCT/EP00/05341

filed June 9, 2000)

Filed : CONCOMITANTLY HEREWITH

For : PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

Art Unit :

Examiner

ATTENTION BOX PCT

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT FILED CONCOMITANT WITH NATIONAL PHASE PCT APPLICATION

Assistant Commissioner for Patents Washington, D.C. 20231

SIR:

This is a PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT filed in the abovereferenced national phase PCT application being filed concurrently herewith.

Please amend as follows:

#### IN THE SPECIFICATION:

Before the first paragraph of the specification insert the following paragraph: --This application is a U.S. National Phase Application under 35 USC 371 of International Application PCT/EP00/05341 (published in English) filed June 9, 1999.--

Express Mail Mailing Label No.: EL 874 117 723 US Dat of Deposit: December 7, 2001

I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office t Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231

Laraine Dobies

In the event that this Paper is late filed, and the necessary petition for extension of time is not filed concurrently herewith, please consider this as a Petition for the requisite extension of time, and to the extent not tendered by check attached hereto, authorization to charge the extension fee, or any other fee required in connection with this Paper to Account No. 06-1378.

## IN THE CLAIMS:

## Cancel claim 4.

Add the following new claims 6 and 7:

- 6. (New) A composition according to claim 1 wherein the oil comprises at least 16% based on the weight of oil, of a mineral oil.
- 7. (New) A composition according to claim 3 wherein the oil comprises at least 16% based on the weight of oil, of a mineral oil.

## REMARKS

Entry of this AMENDMENT and a favorable action on the merits are respectfully requested.

Frishauf, Holtz, Goodman, Langer & Chick, P.C. 767 Third Ave., 25th Floor New York, NY 10017-2023 Tel. No. (212) 319-4900 Fax No.: (212) 319-5101 MJC/ld

MARSHALL J. CHIC Reg. No. 26,853 Attorney Docket No. 01795/HG

# IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant(s): Kevan HATCHMAN et al.

Serial No. : To be assigned (U.S.

National Phase of

PCT/EP00/05341

filed June 9, 2000)

Filed : CONCOMITANTLY HEREWITH

For : PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

Art Unit

Examiner

ATTENTION BOX PCT

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT FILED CONCOMITANT WITH NATIONAL PHASE PCT APPLICATION

ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS Washington, D.C. 20231

SIR:

Submitted herewith are the following:

- (1) Copy of International Search Report issued in the above-referenced PCT application;
- (2) Copies of the cited publications are not enclosed herewith (this is a PCT national phase application);

and

(3) Substitute Form PTO-1449A. It is requested that an initialed copy of the form PTO-1449 be returned to indicate that the publications listed therein have been considered and made of record.

Express Mail Mailing Label No.: EL 874 117 723 US Date of Deposit: December 7, 2001

I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office t Addresses" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed t the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231

Laraine Dobies

In the event that this Paper is lat filed, and the necessary petition for extension of time is not filed concurrently herewith, please consider this as a Petition for the requisite extension of time, and to the extent not tendered by check attached hereto, authorization to charge the extension fee, or any other fee required in connection with this Paper to Account No. 06-1378.

Each of the cited publications is considered relevant or material to the patentability of the present invention in view of the citation thereof in said communication and for the reasons stated in said communication. Said communication is in English.

This is being filed concurrently with the entry into the national phase and, therefore, is timely filed. No late fee is required.

It is therefore respectfully requested that the cited publications listed in the attached Substitute Form for PTO-1449A be considered and made "of record".

Frishauf, Holtz, Goodman, Langer & Chick, P.C. 767 Third Ave., 25th Floor New York, NY 10017-2023 Tel. No. (212) 319-4900 Fax No.: (212) 319-5101 MJC/ld Respectfully submitted,

MARSHALL U. CHICK Reg. No. 26,853

|                        | • •         | •  |                    |   |      | 0.3                       | . Patent and Trademar           | k Of | fice: U.S. DEPAR                      | IMENT OF COM       | MERCE     |
|------------------------|-------------|--|--------------------|---|------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| Substi                 | tute        | for Fo   | orm 144            | 9A/PTO                                  | A    | pplica                    | tion Number                     |      |                                       |                    |           |
| INFORMATION DISCLOSURE |             |  | F:                 | Filing Date                             |      |                           | Herewith                        |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  | PPLIC              |   | F    | irst N                    | amed Inventor                   | Ke   | van HATCHMAN e                        | t al.              | •         |
|                        |             |  |                    |   | G    | r up A                    | rt Unit                         |      |                                       | <del></del>        |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   | E    | xamine                    | r Name                          |      | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | <del></del>        |           |
| Sheet                  | 1           |  | of                 | 2                                       | A    | ttorne                    | y Docket Number                 | 01   | 795/HG                                |                    |           |
|                        |             |  | <del></del>        | -,                                      | v.s. | PATI                      | ENT DOCUMENTS                   |      |                                       |                    |           |
| Ruam.<br>Inits*        | Cite<br>No: | Docume   | ent Numbe          | r                                       |      | Kind<br>Code <sup>2</sup> | Name of Patentee o<br>Applicant | r    | Publication<br>Date NH-DD-YYYY        | Relevan<br>Portion |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   |      |                           |                                 |      | 09-20-1988                            |                    |           |
|                        |             | 1  | 2,427 A<br>5,108 A |   |      |                           | Dawson et al. Bruno et al.      |      | 05-26-1998                            |                    |           |
|                        |             |  | 1,776 A            |   |      |                           | Hidenobu et al.                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
| •                      |             |  | ,                  |   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  | <del></del>        |   | OBET | OV DA                     | manus Documenture               | _    |                                       |                    |           |
|                        | T           | <del>                                     </del> |                    |   | OREI | GN PA<br>Kind             | TENT DOCUMENTS                  |      | Publication                           | Relevant           | Т         |
| Exam<br>Inits'         | Cite<br>No  | Offc,  | Documen            | t Number                                |      | Code                      | Applicant                       |      | Date MM-DD-YYYY                       | Portion            | T'        |
|                        |             |  |                    | 005 3                                   |      |                           |                                 |      | 01-02-1969                            |                    |           |
|                        |             | DE   | 14 67              | 053 A                                   |      |                           |                                 |      | 06-17-1992                            |                    |           |
|                        |             | BE   | 0 450              | 033 R                                   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       | <u> </u>           |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   |      |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
|                        |             |  |                    |   | ,    |                           |                                 |      |                                       |                    |           |
| Exami                  | ner         | <u> </u>   |                    | · - · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |      |                           | Date                            |      | <u> </u>                              |                    | <u>.l</u> |
| Signa                  |             |  |                    |   |      |                           | Considered                      | .nu  | AVOIDA CALCULA                        | 100 11 00F 10      |           |

EXAMINER: Initial it reterence considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with Mysr 609. Draw line through citation it not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

DATE MAILED: December 7, 2001

Unique citation designation number. See kinds of U.S. Patent Documents. Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (MIPO Standard ST.)). For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST. 16 if possible. Place a check here if English translation is attached.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

|                                   |                                       |        |        | /250                       | Application Number  |  |    |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------|--------|----------------------------|---|--|----|
| Substitu                          | te for Form 1449A/PTO                 |        | 9A/PIO | Filing Date                | CONCOMITANT HEREWITH  |  |    |
| INFORMA<br>STATEME                |                                       |        |        |                            | First Named Inventor  | Kevan HATCHMAN et al.                                      |    |
|                                   |                                       |        |        |                            | Group Art Unit  |  |    |
|                                   |                                       |        |        |                            | Examiner Name   |  |    |
| Sheet                             | 2                                     |        | of     | 2                          | Attorney Docket Number  | 01795/HG   | •  |
|                                   | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |        | OTHE   | R PRIOR AR                 | T - NON-PATENT LITERATURE                                       | DOCUMENTS  |    |
| Examiner<br>Initials <sup>1</sup> | Cite<br>No.1                          | Inclu- | de na  | ame of author, volume-issu | (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of e number(s), publisher, city and | article, title of item, date, d/or country where published | T² |
|                                   |                                       | COLLOI | ID I   |                            | Cubic phase-based concents<br>CI. (2000), 223(2),<br>79610      | rated emulsions", J.                                       |    |
| Examiner<br>Signatur              |                                       |        |        |                            | Date<br>Considered  |  |    |

<sup>•</sup> EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPBP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

DATE MAILED: December 7, 2001

<sup>\*</sup> Unique citation designation number. 2 Place a check here if English translation is attached.

Attorney Docket No. 01795/HG

# IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant(s): Kevan HATCHMAN et al.

Serial No. : To be assigned (U.S.

National Phase of PCT/EP00/05341

filed June 9, 2000)

Filed : CONCOMITANTLY HEREWITH

For : PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

Art Unit :

Examiner :

#### ATTENTION BOX PCT

# REQUEST FOR PUBLICATION OF ASSIGNMENT INFORMATION

ASSISTANT COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS Washington, D.C. 20231

SIR:

It is requested that the following assignment information be published as part of the 18-month publication of the present application:

HUNTSMAN INTERNATIONAL LLC and JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPANIES INC.

P.O. Box 9761

210-222 Hagley Road West

Oldbury

West Midlands, B69 4XB

ENGLAND

Frishauf, Holtz, Goodman, Langer & Chick, P.C. 767 Third Ave., 25th Floor New York, NY 10017-2023 Tel. No. (212) 319-4900 Fax No.: (212) 319-5101

MJC/ld

MARSHALL, J CHI Reg. No. 26,853

Respectfully submitted,

Express Mail Mailing Label
No.: EL 874 117 723 US
Date of Deposit: December 7, 2001

I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal Service "Express Mail Post Office to Addressee" service under 37 CFR 1.10 on the date indicated above and is addressed to the Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, D.C. 20231

رديون مهنور

Laraine Dobies

In the event that this Paper is late filed, and the necessary petition for extension of time is not filed concurrently herewith, please consider this as a Petition for the requisite extension of time, and to the extent not tendered by check attached hereto, authorization to charge the extension fee, or any other fee required in connection with this Paper to Account No. 06-1378.

Please type a plus sign (\*) inside this box — Agroved for use through 10/31/2002, OMB 0651-0035

U.S. Palent and Tracement Cffice, U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless 1 department of CMB control number.

## CHANGE OF CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS Application

Address to:

**Assistant Commissioner for Patents** 

Washington, D.C. 20231

| Herewith |
|----------|
|          |
|          |
|          |
| 01795/HG |
|          |

| Please change the Correto: Customer Nu  | espondence Address for the about the |                                       | plication                     | 01933                         |
|---|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| OR  |  |                                       |                               | PATENT, TRADEMARK OFFICE      |
| Firm or Individual Name   |  |                                       |                               |                               |
| Address   |  | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · |                               |                               |
| Address   |  |                                       |                               |                               |
| City  |  | State                                 |                               | ZIP                           |
| Country   |  |                                       | T                             |                               |
| Telephone   |  | Fax                                   |                               |                               |
| Change (PTO/SB/124  I am the :  Applicant/I  Assignee of Statement  Attorney of |  | ed. (Form PTO                         | /S3/96).<br>al letter in an a | polication without an         |
| Name Marshall   | Chich, Reg. No.  | . 26,853                              |                               |                               |
| Signature   |  |                                       |                               |                               |
|   | 7, 2001  |                                       |                               | and a second                  |
| NOTE: Signatures of all the invitorms if more than one signature                | rentors or assignees of record of the enti-<br>re is required, see below.".  | ire interest or their                 | representative(s)             | are required. Submit multiple |
|   | orms are submitted.  |                                       |                               |                               |

Burden Hour Statement; This form is estimated to taxe 3 minutes to comolete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on burden mour Statement. This commits estimated to lake 3 milliones to committee to the Chief Information Officer U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231 20 NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231

## (19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



## 

## (43) International Publication Date 21 December 2000 (21.12.2000)

## **PCT**

# (10) International Publication Number WO 00/76460 A3

(51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: 7/06, 7/50, 7/48, C11D 17/00, 1/94, 3/18 A61K 7/00.

(21) International Application Number: PCT/EP00/05341

(22) International Filing Date: 9 June 2000 (09.06.2000)

(25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data: 9913408.2

10 June 1999 (10.06.1999) GE

- (71) Applicant Ifor all designated States except USI: RHO-DIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED trading as ALBRIGHT & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPA-NIES INC [GB/GB]; 210-222 Halgey Road West, Oldbury, West Midlands B68 ONN (GB).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HATCHMAN, Kevan [GB/GB]; 5 Byland Close, Friarscroft, Bromsgrove, Worcestershire B61 7PL (GB). LUKENBACH, Elvin [US/US]; 160 Klinesville Road, Flemington, NJ 08822 (US). MCCULLOCH, Laura [GB/US]; 18 Hampton Court 07920, Basking Ridge, NJ (US). WTEGAND, Benjamin [US/US]; 2028 Farmview Drive, Newton, PA 18940 (US).

- (74) Agent: SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick; Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited, 210-222 Hagley Road West, Oldbury, West Midlands B68 0NN (GB).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

#### Published:

- With international search report.
- Before the expirction of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments.
- (88) Date of publication of the international search report: 25 May 2001

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.



(57) Abstract: Personal care compositions contain at least 20 % water. 10 to 40 % total surfactant and 2 to 40 % of oil, such as a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (a) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (b) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11 in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (a), said water surfactant and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase baving an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25 °C.

#### INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

tional Application No

PCT/EP 00/05341 A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER IPC 7 A61K7/00 A61K A61K7/06 A61K7/50 A61K7/48 C11D17/00 C11D1/94 C11D3/18 According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system tollowed by classification symbols) IPC 7 A61K C11D Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the halds searched Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where pradical, search terms used) EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, CHEM ABS Data C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages Category \* Relevant to claim No. DE 14 67 825 A (CHESEBROUGH\_PONDS INC.) X 1-5 2 January 1969 (1969-01-02) Y page 1, paragraph 1 - paragraph 2 1-5 page 2, paragraph 3 page 3, paragraph 3 page 4, paragraph 4 -page 5, paragraph 1 page 9, paragraph 4 -page 11, paragraph 2 ... examples claims US 4 772 427 A (DAWSON ANDREW F ET AL) 1-3 Α 20 September 1988 (1988-09-20) abstract column 3, line 21 - line 24 column 3, line 41 -column 4, line 5 column 4, line 22 - line 34 examples 1.3.4.7claims -/--Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C. Patent family members are listed in annex. X \* Special categories of cited documents : "T" later document published after the international filing data or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the "A" document defining the general state of the lan which is not considered to be of particular relevance invention \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention filing date cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone citation or other special reason (as specified)

- "O" document reterring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filling date but later than the priority date claimed
- \*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other, such docu-ments, such combination being obvious to a person skilled. in the art

Date of mailing of the international search report

"3" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

30 January 2001 14/03/2001

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentiaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo ni. Fac (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Cielen, E

## FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

#### Continuation of Box I.2

Present claims 1-5 relate to a composition and a method defined by reference to the parameter "an II phase having an II/L1 transition temperature greater than 25 degrees C". The use of this parameter in the present context is considered to lead to a lack of clarity within the meaning of Article 6 PCT. It is impossible to compare the parameter the applicant has chosen to employ with what is set out in the prior art. The lack of clarity is such as to render a meaningful complete search impossible. Consequently, the search has been restricted to compositions having the properties of an II phase as described in the description (p. 1, par. 5, p. 5, par. 3 and 4, and p. 6, par. 2), namely compositions in the form of clear gels, ringing gels or having a visous isotropic or a "VI" phase or a cubic liquid crystalline phase, or being immobile, non-Newtonian, optically isotropic and transparent.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int ... donal Application No PCT/EP 00/05341

| Category   C-laich of occument, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages   Relevant to Claim No.   | C.(Continu | ation) COCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT  | PCT/EP 00/05341       |
|--|------------|---|-----------------------|
| 26 May 1998 (1998-05-26) abstract column 1, line 1 -column 2, line 16 column 2, line 63 -column 5, line 7 column 7, line 32 -column 8, line 4 examples 1,2,6  LUS 5 474 776 A (KOYANAGI HIDENOBU ET AL) 12 December 1995 (1995-12-12) abstract column 2, line 4 - line 19 column 2, line 35 -column 5, line 30 table 3 examples 3,4 claims 1,2  PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 1999, no. 06, 31 March 1999 (1999-03-31) & JP 03 143420 A (PROCTER &GAMBLE CO:THE), 4 June 1996 (1996-06-04) abstract  Ef 0 490 053 A (WELLA AG) 17 June 1992 (1992-06-17) abstract Page 2, line 35 -page 3, line 56  PAR RODRIGUEZ, CARLOS ET AL: "Cubic phase -based concentrated emulsions" J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204, |            |   | Retevant to claim No. |
| 12 December 1995 (1995-12-12) abstract column 2, line 4 - line 19 column 2. line 35 -column 5, line 30 table 3 examples 3,4 claims 1,2  PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 1999, no. 06, 31 March 1999 (1999-03-31) £ JP 03 143420 A (PROCTER &GAMBLE CO:THE), 4 June 1996 (1996-06-04) abstract  Ef 0 490 053 A (WELLA AG) 17 June 1992 (1992-06-17) abstract page 2, line 35 -page 3, line 56  PAY RODRIGUEZ, CARLOS ET AL: "Cubic phase -based concentrated emulsions" J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204, XP000979610 abstract page 197, column 1, paragraph 2 -column 2, paragraph 4 figure 1 page 198, column 1, paragraph 5 page 199, column 1, paragraph 2 -page 200, column 1, paragraph 1 -page 203         | A          | 26 May 1998 (1998-05-26) abstract column 1, line 1 -column 2, line 16 column 2, line 63 -column 5, line 7 column 7, line 32 -column 8, line 4 examples 1,2,6  | 1-5                   |
| vol. 1999, no. 06, 31 March 1999 (1999-03-31) & J? 03 143420 A (PROCTER & GAMBLE CO:THE), 4 June 1996 (1996-06-04) abstract  E? 0 490 053 A (WELLA AG) 17 June 1992 (1992-06-17) abstract page 2, line 35 -page 3, line 56  Y RODRIGUEZ, CARLOS ET AL: "Cubic phase -based concentrated emulsions" J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204,  |            | 12 December 1995 (1995-12-12) abstract column 2, line 4 - line 19 column 2. line 35 -column 5, line 30 table 3 examples 3,4   | 1-3                   |
| 17 June 1992 (1992-06-17) abstract page 2, line 35 -page 3, line 56  P,Y  RODRIGUEZ, CARLOS ET AL: "Cubic phase -based concentrated emulsions" J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204,  | A          | vol. 1999, no. 06,<br>31 March 1999 (1999-03-31)<br>& JP 08 143420 A (PROCTER &GAMBLE<br>CO:THE), 4 June 1996 (1996-06-04)  |                       |
| -based concentrated emulsions" J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204, XP000979610 abstract page 197, column 1, paragraph 2 -column 2, paragraph 4 figure 1 page 198, column 1, paragraph 5 page 199, column 1, paragraph 2 -page 200, column 1, paragraph 2 page 202, column 1, paragraph 1 -page 203  | A          | 17 June 1992 (1992-06-17)<br>abstract   | 1-3                   |
|  | P,Y        | -based concentrated emulsions" J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204, XP000979610 abstract page 197, column 1, paragraph 2 -column 2, paragraph 4 figure 1 page 198, column 1, paragraph 5 page 199, column 1, paragraph 2 -page 200, column 1, paragraph 2 page 202, column 1, paragraph 1 -page 203 | 1-5                   |

Form PCT/ISA210 ,continuation of second sheet) (July 1992)

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Int Lional Application No PCT/EP 00/05341

| Patent document<br>cited in search repo | rt | Publication date |          | Patent family member(s) | Publication<br>cate      |
|---|----|------------------|----------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| DE 1467825                              | A  | 02-01-1969       | 11       | 950501 B                | 20-06-1973               |
| US 4772427                              | A  | 20-09-1988       | AT       | 399654 B                | 26-06-1995               |
|   |    |                  | AT       | 289988 A                | 15-11-1994               |
|   |    |                  | ΑU       | 2100288 A               | 01-06-1989               |
|   |    |                  | 86       | 1001545 A               | 23-11-1989               |
|   |    |                  | BR       | 8803939 A               | 13-03-1990               |
|   |    |                  | CA       | 1315637 A               | 06-04-1993               |
|   |    |                  | CH       | 678811 A                | 15-11-1991               |
|   |    |                  | DE       | 3839349 A               | 15-06-1989               |
|   |    |                  | DK       | 433988 A                | 02-06-1989               |
|   |    |                  | ES       | 2007997 A               | 01-07-1989               |
|   |    |                  | FI       | 883634 A,B,             | 02-06-1989               |
|   |    |                  | FR       | 2623816 A               | 02-06-1989               |
|   |    |                  | GB       | 2213160 A,B             | 09-08-1989               |
|   |    |                  | GR<br>IE | 83100513 A,B            | 31-10-1989               |
|   |    |                  | IT       | 61585 B                 | 16-11-1994               |
|   |    |                  | JP       | 1224719 B<br>1153624 A  | 18-10-1990               |
|   |    |                  | LÜ       | 87321 A                 | 15-06-1989               |
|   |    |                  | MX       | 163643 B                | 08-03-1989               |
|   |    |                  | NĹ       | 8802031 A               | 10-06-1992<br>03-07-1989 |
|   |    |                  | CM       | 173555 C                | 29-12-1993               |
|   |    |                  | PT       | 88252 A,B               | 10-11-1989               |
|   |    |                  | SE       | 8802800 A               | 02-06-1989               |
|   |    | ·                | - ZA .   |                         | 25-04-1990               |
| US 5756108                              | Α  | 26-05-1998       | FR       | 2726762 A               | 15-05-1996               |
|   |    |                  | AT       | 192645 T                | 15-05-2000               |
|   |    |                  | CA       | 2162520 A               | 11-05-1996               |
|   |    |                  | DE<br>DE | 69516803 D              | 15-06-2000               |
|   |    |                  | EP.      | 69516803 T              | 07-12-2000               |
|   |    |                  | ES       | 0711540 A<br>2146299 T  | 15-05-1996               |
|   |    |                  | JF       | 8225465 A               | 01-08-2000<br>03-09-1996 |
|   |    |                  | US       | 6071524 A               | 05-05-2000               |
|   |    | 10 10 1005       |          |                         |                          |
| US 5474776                              | Α. | 12-12-1995       | JР       | 2736486 B               | 02-04-1998               |
|   |    |                  | JP       | 6016524 A               | 25-01-1994               |
| JP 08143420                             | Α  | 04-06-1996       | JP       | 2849339 B               | 20-01-1999               |
| EP 0490053                              | Α  | 17-06-1992       | DE       | 4039063 A               | 11-06-1992               |
|   |    |                  | DΞ       | 59102434 D              | 08-09-1994               |
|   |    |                  | ES       | 2042462 T               | 16-12-1993               |
|   |    |                  | Jp<br>Jp | 4266811 A               | 22-09-1992               |
|   |    | •                | US       | 5298240 A               | 29-03-1994               |

# (19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau





(43) International Publication Date 21 December 2000 (21.12.2000)

**PCT** 

# (10) International Publication Number WO 00/76460 A3

- (51) International Patent Classification<sup>7</sup>: A61K 7/00, 7/06, 7/50, 7/48, C11D 17/00, 1/94, 3/18
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/EP00/05341
- (22) International Filing Date: 9 June 2000 (09.06.2000)
- (25) Filing Language:

English

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data: 9913408.2

10 June 1999 (10.06.1999) GB

- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): RHO-DIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED trading as ALBRIGHT & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPA-NIES INC [GB/GB]: 210-222 Halgey Road West, Oldbury, West Midlands B68 ONN (GB).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HATCHMAN, Kevan [GB/GB]; 5 Byland Close, Friarscroft, Bromsgrove, Worcestershire B61 7PL (GB). LUKENBACH, Elvin [US/US]; 160 Klinesville Road, Flemington, NJ 08822 (US). MCCULLOCH, Laura [GB/US]; 18 Hampton Court 07920, Basking Ridge, NJ (US). WIEGAND, Benjamin [US/US]: 2028 Farmview Drive. Newton, PA 18940 (US).

- (74) Agent: SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick; Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited, 210-222 Hagley Road West, Oldbury, West Midlands B63 0NN (GB).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

#### Published:

- With international search report.
- Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments.
- (88) Date of publication of the international search report: 25 May 2001

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.



(57) Abstract: Personal care compositions contain at least 20 % water, 10 to 40 % total surfactant and 2 to 40 % of oil, such as a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (a) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (b) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11 in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (a), said water surfactant and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25 °C.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

tot tional Application No PCT/EP 00/05341

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER IPC 7 A61K7/00 A61K A61K7/06 A61K7/50 A61K7/48 C11D17/00 C11D1/94 C11D3/18 According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC B. FIELDS SEARCHED Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols) A61K C11D Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included, in the fields searched Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical search terms used) EPO-Internal, WPI Data, PAJ, CHEM ABS Data C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages Relevant to claim No. Category \* DE 14 67 825 A (CHESEBROUGH\_PONDS INC.) 2 January 1969 (1969-01-02) X 1-5 Y page 1, paragraph 1 - paragraph 2 1 - 5page 2, paragraph 3 page 3, paragraph 3 page 4, paragraph 4 -page 5, paragraph 1 page 9, paragraph 4 -page 11, paragraph 2. examples claims US 4 772 427 A (DAWSON ANDREW F ET AL) Α 1 - 320 September 1988 (1988-09-20) abstract column 3, line 21 - line 24 column 3, line 41 -column 4, line 5 column 4, line 22 - line 34 examples 1,3,4,7claims Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C. Patent family members are tisted in annex. . Special categories of cited documents : 'T' later document published after the international filing date or pnonty date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the \*A\* document defining the general state of the lart which is not considered to be of particular relevance. invention \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international "X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to filing date "L" document which may throw doubts on prionty claim(s) or involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) "Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such docu-\*O\* document reterring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or ments, such combination being obvious to a person skilled other means document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed \*3\* document member of the same patent family Date of the actual completion of the international search Date of mailing of the international search report 30 January 2001 14/03/2001 Name and mailing address of the ISA Authorized officer European Patent Office. P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl. Cielen, E Fac (+31-70) 340-3016

3

## FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

#### Continuation of Box I.2

Present claims 1-5 relate to a composition and a method defined by reference to the parameter "an II phase having an II/LI transition temperature greater than 25 degrees C". The use of this parameter in the present context is considered to lead to a lack of clarity within the meaning of Article 6 PCI. It is impossible to compare the parameter the applicant has chosen to employ with what is set out in the prior art. The lack of clarity is such as to render a meaningful complete search impossible. Consequently, the search has been restricted to compositions having the properties of an II phase as described in the description (p. 1, par. 5, p. 5, par. 3 and 4, and p. 6, par. 2), namely compositions in the form of clear gels, ringing gels or having a visous isotropic or a "VI" phase or a cubic liquid crystalline phase, or being immobile, non-Newtonian, optically isotropic and transparent.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int Alonal Application No PCT/EP 00/05341

| Category * | Cialco of recurrent with indication where appropriate of the retornal passages  |                       |
|------------|---|-----------------------|
| Category 3 | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages  | Relevant to claim No. |
| A          | US 5 756 108 A (BIATRY BRUNO ET AL) 26 May 1998 (1998-05-26) abstract column 1, line 1 -column 2, line 16 column 2, line 63 -column 5, line 7 column 7, line 32 -column 8, line 4 examples 1,2,6 claims   | 1-5                   |
| <br>       | US 5 474 776 A (KOYANAGI HIDENOBU ET AL) 12 December 1995 (1995-12-12) abstract column 2, line 4 - line 19 column 2, line 35 -column 5, line 30 table 3 examples 3,4 claims 1,2   | 1-3                   |
| Α          | PATENT ABSTRACTS OF JAPAN vol. 1999, no. 06, 31 March 1999 (1999-03-31) & JP 08 143420 A (PROCTER & GAMBLE CO:THE), 4 June 1996 (1996-06-04) abstract   |                       |
| Α          | EP 0 490 053 A (WELLA AG)<br>17 June 1992 (1992-06-17)<br>abstract<br>page 2, line 35 -page 3, line 56  | 1-3                   |
| P,Y        | RODRIGUEZ, CARLOS ET AL: "Cubic phase -based concentrated emulsions"  J. COLLOID INTERFACE SCI. (2000), 223(2), 197-204,    XP000979610 abstract page 197, column 1, paragraph 2 -column 2, paragraph 4    figure 1 page 198, column 1, paragraph 5 page 199, column 1, paragraph 2 -page 200, column 1, paragraph 2 page 202, column 1, paragraph 1 -page 203, column 1, paragraph 1 | 1-5                   |
|            | ·   |                       |

3

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Int .tional Application No PCT/EP 00/05341

| Patent document      |     | Publication  |                   | Data and a li           |                     |
|----------------------|-----|--------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| cited in search repo | ort | date         |                   | Patent family member(s) | Publication date    |
| DE 1467825           | A   | 02-01-1969   | I i               | 950501 B                | 20-06-1973          |
| US 4772427           | · A | 20-09-1988   | AT                | 399654 B                | 26-06-1995          |
|                      |     |              | AT                | 289988 A                | 15-11-1994          |
|                      |     |              | AU                | 2100288 A               | 01-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | ΒE                | 1001545 A               | 28-11-1989          |
|                      |     |              | BR                | 8803939 A               | 13-03-1990          |
|                      |     |              | CA                | 1315637 A               | 06-04-1993          |
|                      |     |              | CH                | 678811 A                | 15-11-1991          |
|                      |     |              | DE                | 3839349 A               | 15-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | DK                | 433988 A                | 02-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | ES                | 2007997 A               | 01-07-1989          |
|                      |     |              | FI                | 883634 A,B,             | 02-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | FR                | 2623816 A               | 02-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | GB                | 2213160 A,B             | 09-08-1989          |
|                      |     |              | GR                | 88100513 A,B            | 31-10-1989          |
|                      |     |              | ΙE                | 61585 B                 | 16-11-1994          |
|                      |     |              | IT                | 1224719 B               | 18-10-1990          |
|                      |     |              | JP                | 1153624 A               | 15-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | LU                | 87321 A                 | 08-03-1989          |
|                      |     |              | MX                | 163643 B                | 10-06-1992          |
|                      |     |              | NL                | 8802031 A               | 03-07-1989          |
|                      |     |              | СИ                | 173555 C                | 29-12-1993          |
|                      |     |              | PT                | 88252 A,B               | 10-11-1989          |
|                      |     |              | SE                | 8802800 A               | 02-06-1989          |
|                      |     |              | - Z-A -           | 8805794 A               | 25-04-1990          |
| US 5756108           | Α   | 26-05-1998   | FR                | 2726762 A               | 15-05-1996          |
|                      |     | ì            | AT                | 192645 T                | 15-05-2000          |
|                      |     |              | CA                | 2162520 A               | 11-05-1996          |
|                      |     |              | DE                | 69516803 D              | 15-06-2000          |
|                      |     |              | DE                | 69516803 T              | 07-12-2000          |
|                      |     |              | EP                | 0711540 A               | 15-05 <b>-</b> 1996 |
|                      |     |              | ES                | 2146299 T               | 01-08-2000          |
|                      |     |              | JF                | 8225465 A               | 03-09-1996          |
|                      |     | ~~~~~~~~~~~~ | US<br>            | 6071524 A               | 06-06-2000          |
| US 5474776           | Α.  | 12-12-1995   | JP                | 2736486 B               | 02-04-1998          |
|                      |     |              | კР<br><del></del> | 6016524 A               | 25-01-1994          |
| JP 08143420          | A   | 04-06-1996   | JP                | 2849339 B               | 20-01-1999          |
| EP 0490053           | Α   | 17-06-1992   | DE                | 4039063 A               | 11-06-1992          |
|                      |     |              | DΞ                | 59102434 D              | 08-09-1994          |
|                      |     |              | ES                | 2042462 T               | 16-12-1993          |
|                      |     |              | J۶                | 4266811 A               | 22-09-1992          |
|                      |     |              | US                | 5298240 A               | 29-03-1994          |

## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

### **PCT**

### NOTIFICATION CONCERNING SUBMISSION OR TRANSMITTAL OF PRIORITY DOCUMENT

(PCT Administrative Instructions, Section 411)

#### From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited 210-222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B68 0NN ROYAUME-UNI

| MPORTANT NOTIFICATION  |
|--|
| International filing date (day/month/year) 09 June 2000 (09.06.00) |
| Priority date (day/month/year) 10 June 1999 (10.06.99)             |
| TED et al  |
|  |

- 1. The applicant is hereby notified of the date of receipt (except where the letters "NR" appear in the right-hand column) by the International Bureau of the priority document(s) relating to the earlier application(s) indicated below. Unless otherwise indicated by an asterisk appearing next to a date of receipt, or by the letters "NR", in the right-hand column, the priority document concerned was submitted or transmitted to the International Bureau in compliance with Rule 17.1(a) or (b).
- 2. This updates and replaces any previously issued notification concerning submission or transmittal of priority documents.
- 3. An asterisk(\*) appearing next to a date of receipt, in the right-hand column, denotes a priority document submitted or transmitted to the International Bureau but not in compliance with Rule 17.1(a) or (b). In such a case, the attention of the applicant is directed to Rule 17.1(c) which provides that no designated Office may disregard the priority claim concerned before giving the applicant an opportunity, upon entry into the national phase, to furnish the priority document within a time limit which is reasonable under the circumstances.
- 4. The letters "NR" appearing in the right-hand column denote a priority document which was not received by the International Bureau or which the applicant did not request the receiving Office to prepare and transmit to the International Bureau, as provided by Rule 17.1(a) or (b), respectively. In such a case, the attention of the applicant is directed to Rule 17.1(c) which provides that no designated Office may disregard the priority claim concerned before giving the applicant an opportunity, up n entry into the national phase, to furnish the priority document within a time limit which is reasonable under the circumstances.

Priority date Priority application No. Country or regional Office pr PCT receiving Office of priority document

10 June 1999 (10.06.99) 9913408.2 GB 09 Augu 2000 (09.08.00)

The International Bureau of WIPO 34, chemin des C I mbettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Authorized officer

Athina Nickitas-Etieppe

Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38

Facsimile No. 791-22) 740.14.35

## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

ROYAUME-UNI

PCT Middle.

NOTICE INFORMING THE APPLICANT OF THE COMMUNICATION OF THE INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION TO THE DESIGNATED OFFICES

(PCT Rule 47.1(c), first sentence)

To:

SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited 210-222 Hagley Road West Oldbury West Midlands B68 0NN

Date of mailing (day/month/year)

21 December 2000 (21.12.00)

Applicant's or agent's file reference
/ MPD315/PCT/BGMS

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Internati nal application No. PCT/EP00/05341 International filing date (day/month/year)
09 June 2000 (09.06.00)

Priority date (day/month/year) 10 June 1999 (10.06.99)

Applicant

RHODIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED trading as ALBRIGHT & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JO et al

N tice is hereby given that the International Bureau has communicated, as provided in Article 20, the international application
to the fillowing designated Offices on the date indicated above as the date of mailing of this Notice:
AG,AU,DZ,KP,KR,MZ,US

In accordance with Rule 47.1(c), third sentence, those Offices will accept the present Notice as conclusive evidence that the communication of the international application has duly taken place on the date of mailing indicated above and no copy of the international application is required to be furnished by the applicant to the designated Office(s).

2. The following designated Offices have waived the requirement for such a communication at this time:

AE,AL,AM,AP,AT,AZ,BA,BB,BG,BR,BY,CA,CH,CN,CR,CU,CZ,DE,DK,DM,EA,EE,EP,ES,FI,GB,GD,GE,GH,GM,HR,HU,ID,IL,IN,IS,JP,KE,KG,KZ,LC,LK,LR,LS,LT,LU,LV,MA,MD,MG,MK,MN,MW,MX,NO,NZ,OA,PL,PT,RO,RU,SD,SE,SG,SI,SK,SL,TJ,TM,TR,TT,TZ,UA,UG,UZ,VN,YU,ZA,ZW
The communication will be made to those Offices only upon their request. Furthermore, those Offices do not require the applicant to furnish a copy of the international application (Rule 49.1(a-bis)).

- 3. Enclosed with this Notice is a copy of the international application as published by the International Bureau on
  - 21 December 2000 (21,12.00) under No. WO 00/76460

#### REMINDER REGARDING CHAPTER II (Article 31(2)(a) and Rule 54.2)

If the applicant wishes to postpone entry into the national phase until 30 months (or later in some Offices) from the priority date, a demand for international preliminary examination must be filed with the competent International Preliminary Examining Authority before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date.

It is the applicant's sole responsibility to monitor the 19-month time limit.

Note that only an applicant who is a national or resident of a PCT Contracting State which is bound by Chapter II has the right tille a demand for international preliminary examination.

## REMINDER REGARDING ENTRY INTO THE NATIONAL PHASE (Article 22 or 39(1))

If the applicant wishes to proceed with the international application in the national phase, he must, within 20 months or 30 months, or later in some Offices, perform the acts referred to therein before each designated or elected Office.

Fir further important information on the time limits and acts to be performed for entering the national phase, see the Annex to Form PCT/IB/301 (Notification of Receipt of Record Copy) and Volume II of the PCT Applicant's Guide.

The International Sureau of WIPO 34, ch min des Col mbettes 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland Authorized fficer

J. Zahra

Facsimile No\_(49-22) 740.14.35

Telephone No. (41-22) 338.83.38

## (12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

## (19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau





(43) International Publication Date 21 December 2000 (21.12.2000)

PCT

## (10) International Publication Number WO 00/76460 A2

(51) International Patent Classification7:

18940 (US).

PCT/EP00/05341

(21) International Application Number:

(22) International Filing Date:

9 June 2000 (09.06.2000)

(25) Filing Language:

English

A61K 7/00

(26) Publication Language:

English

(30) Priority Data: 9913408.2

10 June 1999 (10.06.1999)

- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): RHO-DIA CONSUMER SPECIALTIES LIMITED trading as ALBRIGHT & WILSON SURFACTANTS EUROPE AND JOHNSON & JOHNSON CONSUMER COMPA-NIES INC [GB/GB]; 210-222 Halgey Road West, Oldbury, West Midlands B68 0NN (GB).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): HATCHMAN, Kevan [GB/GB]; 5 Byland Close, Friarscroft, Bromsgrove, Worcestershire B61 7PL (GB). LUKENBACH, Elvin [US/US]; 160 Klinesville Road, Flemington, NJ 08822 (US). MCCULLOCH, Laura [GB/US]; 18 Hampton Court 07920. Basking Ridge, NJ (US). WIEGAND,

Benjamin [US/US]: 2028 Farmview Drive, Newton, PA

- (74) Agent: SAVIDGE, Roger, Gordon, Madgwick; Rhodia Consumer Specialties Limited, 210-222 Hagley Road West, Oldbury. West Midlands B68 0NN (GB).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

#### Published:

Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

(57) Abstract: Personal care compositions contain at least 20 % water, 10 to 40 % total surfactant and 2 to 40 % of oil, such as a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (a) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (b) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11 in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (a), said water surfactant and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an  $I_1$  phase having an  $I_1/L_1$  transition temperature greater than 25 °C.

## PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS

The present invention relates to shampoo or cleaning compositions suitable for personal care applications in the form of  $I_1$  mesophase systems containing dispersed oil.

Dispersing oil in aqueous shampoo and body wash formulations has presented problems. To prevent the oil phase separating it must either be: (A) emulsified which involves dispersing the oil as colloidal single droplets; (B) microemulsified which involves forming a micellar solution with oil incorporated into surfactant micelles; (C) suspended in a structured surfactant system which typically comprises a dispersion of a surfactant mesophase in aqueous electrolyte; or (D) incorporated into a water soluble solid, pasty or gelatinous composition.

With the exception of microemulsions which are clear, thermodynamically stable, micellar solutions, the foregoing systems are necessarily opaque and contain the oil dispersed in a relatively coarse form, which does not deposit satisfactorily on skin or hair.

However microemulsions are difficult to formulate using the surfactants which are most effective in body wash and other personal care formulations and contain relatively low concentrations of surfactant.

We have now discovered that oil may be stably incorporated into the structure of an I<sub>1</sub> phase to form a clear gel-like composition which contains higher concentrations of surfactant and oil than conventional microemulsions, but which dissolves in water to form a microemulsion. The novel oil-in-I<sub>1</sub> compositions also form microemulsions on heating.

Surfactants are known to form mesophases or liquid crystal phases at concentrations above approximately 30% by weight based on the weight of water and surfactant. Mesophases are phases which exhibit a degree of order intermediate between typical liquids and solids. Generally mesophases combine long range order associated with crystals, with fast molecular motion common to liquids.

The formation of detergent mesophases is well documented. Different surfactants and surfactant mixtures differ widely in their ability to form the numerous different mesophases, and in respect of the conditions of concentration and temperature at which they are formed. For a typical surfactant of the type normally used in cleaning products the following mesophases are usually observed. The concentrations given are illustrative only and may vary considerably from one surfactant or surfactant mixture to the next.

Below approximately 30% surfactant an isotropic L<sub>1</sub> phase is formed (with micelles of surfactant in water). Above 30% surfactant many detergents form a M phase which is not normally used in personal care applications since it dos not show suitable flow characteristics and is difficult to dissolve or disperse in water. Above the concentrations required to form an M phase, but usually at concentrations of less than 80% active surfactant, i.e. 60%-80% a G-phase is formed. At concentrations higher than those required to form a G-phase, i.e. typically greater than 80% active surfactant, most surfactants form a hydrated solid, and some, especially non-ionic surfactants form a liquid phase containing dispersed micelle sized droplets of water - an inverted micellar solution known as an L<sub>2</sub> phase. L<sub>2</sub> detergent systems do not disperse readily in water and have a tendency to form undesirable gels, e.g. M phases, on dilution.

Some surfactants form viscous isotropic or VI phases. These are immobile phases usually with a vitreous appearance, and have been relatively little studied compared to the other phases discussed above. They have been virtually ignored in the context of formulating cleaning compositions because most of the surfactants and surfactant systems which are commonly used in cleaning compositions do not form VI phases, at least at

normal temperatures, or form them only within narrow concentration ranges and because their known properties as immobile gels has deterred formulators from investigating them. They are recognised as being the most viscous of the lyotropic mesophases.

The different surfactant phases can be recognised by a combination of appearance, rheology, textures under the microscope, electron microscopy and x-ray diffraction or neutron scattering. A detailed description, with illustrations, of the difference textures observable using a polarising microscope, is to be found in the paper by Rosevear JAOCS Vol 31, p628.

The following terms may require explanation or definition:

The "hydrophilic: lipophilic balance", or "HLB" value is used as a measure of the relative affinities of the surfactants for water and oil respectively and correlates with their effectiveness as emulsifiers. HLB value can easily be calculated for alcohol ethoxylates since it is one fifth of the weight percent of ethylene oxide based on the total mole weight. Other surfactants can be assigned equivalent values by applying more complicated formulae or by measuring their relative affinity for water and oil. An HLB value of 20 represents a completely water soluble oil insoluble surfactant, while an HLB value of 0 represents a completely oil soluble and water insoluble surfactant.

"Optically isotropic" surfactant phases do not normally tend to rotate the plane of polarisation of plane polarised light. If a drop of sample is placed between two sheets of optically plane polarising material whose planes are at right angles, and light is shone on to one sheet, optically isotropic surfactant samples do not appear substantially brighter than their surrounding when viewed through the other sheet. Optically anisotropic materials appear substantially brighter. Optically anisotropic mesophases typically show characteristic textures when viewed through a microscope between crossed polarisers, whereas optically isotropic phases usually show a featureless continuum.

"Newtonian liquids" have a viscosity which remains constant at different shear rates. For the purpose of this specification, liquids are considered Newtonian if the viscosity does not vary substantially at shear rates up to 1000 sec<sup>-1</sup>.

"Lamellar" phases are phases which comprise a plurality of bilayers of surfactant arranged in parallel and separated by liquid medium. They include both solid phases and the typical form of the liquid crystal G-phase. G-phases are typically pourable, non-Newtonian, anisotropic products. They are typically viscous-looking, opalescent materials with a characteristic "smeary" appearance on flowing. They form characteristic texture under the polarising microscope and freeze fractured samples have a lamellar appearance under the electron microscope. X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering similarly reveal a lamellar structure, with a principal peak typically between 4 and 10nm, usually 5 to 6nm. Higher order peaks, when present occur at double or higher integral multiples of the Q value of the principal peak. Q is the momentum transfer vector and is related, in the case of lamellar phases, to the repeat spacing d by the equation  $Q = \frac{2n}{d}$  [pi] where n is the order of the peak.

G-phases, however, can exist in several different forms, including domains of parallel sheets which constitute the bulk of the typical G-phases described above and spherulites formed from a number of concentric spheroidal shells, each of which is a bilayer of surfactant. In this specification the term "lamellar" will be reserved for compositions which are at least partly of the former type. Opaque compositions at least predominantly of the latter type in which the continuous phase is a substantially isotropic solution containing dispersed spherulites are referred to herein as "G-phase compositions". G-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as L<sub>(alpha)</sub> phases.

L<sub>1</sub>-phases are mobile, optically isotropic, and typically Newtonian liquids which show no texture under the polarising microscope. Electron microscopy is capable of resolving the texture of such phases only at very high magnifications, and X-ray or neutron scattering normally gives only a single broad peak typical of a liquid structure, at very small angles

close to the reference beam. The viscosity of an  $L_1$ -phase is usually low, but may rise significantly as the concentration approaches the upper phase boundary.

"M-phases" are typically immobile, anisotropic products resembling low melting point waxes. They give characteristic textures under the polarising microscope, and a hexagonal diffraction pattern by X-ray or neutron diffraction which comprises a major peak, usually at values corresponding to a repeat spacing between 4 and 10nm, and sometimes higher order peaks, the first at a Q-value which is 3<sup>0.5</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak and the next double the Q-value of the principal peak. M-phases are sometimes referred to in the literature as H-phases.

The viscous isotropic or "VI" phases are typically immobile, non-Newtonian, optically isotropic and are typically transparent, at least when pure. VI phases have a cubic symmetrical diffraction pattern, under X-ray diffraction or neutron scattering, with a principal peak and higher order peaks at 2<sup>0.5</sup> and 3<sup>0.5</sup> times the Q-value of the principal peak.

These cubic liquid crystalline phases are sometimes observed immediately following the micellar phase at ambient temperature as the concentration of surfactant is increased. It has been proposed that such VI phases, sometimes referred to as  $I_1$  phase, may arise from the packing of micelles (probably spherical) in a cubic lattice. At ambient temperature a further increase in surfactant concentration usually results in hexagonal phase  $(M_1)$ , which may be followed by a lamellar phase (G).  $I_1$  phases, when they occur, are usually only observed over a narrow range of concentrations, typically just above those at which the  $L_1$ -phase is formed. The location of such VI phases in a phase diagram suggests that the phase is built up of small closed surfactant aggregates in a water continuum.

An inverse form of the  $I_1$  phase (the  $I_2$  phase) has also been reported, possibly between the inverse hexagonal  $(M_2)$  and  $L_2$  phases. It consists of a surfactant continuum containing a cubic array of inverted micelles. An alternative form of the VI phase called the  $V_1$  phase has been observed at concentrations between the M and G phases and may comprise a bicontinuous system. This may exhibit an even higher viscosity than the  $I_1$ . An inverse phase, the  $V_2$  phase, between the G and  $M_2$  phases has also been postulated.

VI phases are typically examples of "ringing gels". When a jar or beaker containing such a phase is sharply struck, a distinctive vibration can be felt in the composition.

The I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature will be referred to herein as the melting point of the I<sub>1</sub> phase for convenience, although it is not strictly speaking the melting point since the VI phases are not solids.

All references herein to the formation or existence of specific phases or structures are to be construed, unless the context requires otherwise, as references to their formation or existence at 20°C.

Hexagonal gels (M-phase) have been referred to in the prior art as cleaning compositions, e.g. GB 2 179 055, EP I 153 837 and colloidal gels formed with gelling agents such as synthetic polymers or gelatin have also been suggested, e.g. US 4 465 663.

However these compositions cannot be readily dissolved in water to form microemulsions. They are moreover usually opaque and of an unattractive appearance and often require the presence of solvents such as glycols which add to the cost and are environmentally undesirable.

The use of a type of ringing gel to suspend oil for cosmetic or pharmaceutical applications was described in US 4 026 818 but the formulation requires the presence of hydroxylic solvents and utilises a surfactant system which is unsuitable for shampoo applications. EP O 598 335 describes the use of various cubic phases including I<sub>1</sub> phases as laundry prespotters and for other cleaning formulations. If does not suggest how such phases could be used to suspend oil or form microemulsions. Normally attempts to

suspend oil in surfactant mesophases result in coarse droplets of oil being suspended in the aqueous phase of a structured surfactant.

Our invention provides a concentrated personal cleansing composition comprising, by weight of the composition, at least 20% water, 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of oil, such as a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil wherein said surfactant comprises (A) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (B) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11, in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (A), said surfactant water and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an  $I_1$  phase having an  $I_1/L_1$  transition temperature greater than  $25^{\circ}$ C.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an  $I_1$  phase over a comparatively broad surfactant concentration range e.g. more than  $\pm 5\%$  or greater, which range typically lies above 15% by weight total surfactant based on the weight of the composition e.g. between 20% and 40% by weight surfactant usually between 25% and 60%.

The surfactants are preferably selected to provide an I<sub>1</sub> phase which melts above 30°C e.g. above 35°C, most preferably above 40°C. Preferably the I<sub>1</sub> phase melts at a temperature substantially below 100°C, e.g. below 90°C, more preferably below 80°C, most preferably below 70°C, especially below 60°C, typically below 55°C, usually below 50°C.

The surfactant mixture preferably has a mean HLB based on the molar proportions of the components between 10 and 15 e.g. 11 to 14. The surfactants preferably comprise non-ionic surfactants such as ethoxylated alcohols. It has been found that highly ethoxylated fatty alcohols, e.g. more than 10 EO groups, preferably more than 15 EO groups, especially 18 to 50 EO groups form I<sub>1</sub> phases particularly readily.

Other non-ionic surfactants which may be present include:-

alkyl phenol ethoxylates, fatty acid ethoxylates, fatty acid monoalkylolamide ethoxylates, fatty alcohol propoxylates, fatty anime alkoxylates and fatty acid glyceryl ester ethoxylates. Other non-ionic compounds suitable for inclusion in compositions of the present invention include mixed ethylene oxide propylene oxide block copolymers, low relative molecular mass polyethylene glycols e.g. PEG600 and PEG200, ethylene glycol monoesters, amine oxides and alkyl polyglycosides, alkyl sugar esters including alkyl sucrose esters and alkyl oligosaccharide ester, alkyl capped polyvinyl alcohol and alkyl capped polyvinyl pyrrolidone.

Compositions of the invention may also comprise anionic surfactants, in addition to or instead of non-ionic surfactants. Anionic surfactant may comprise a  $C_{10-20}$  alkyl benzene sulphonate or an alkyl ether sulphate which is preferably the product obtained by ethoxylating a natural fatty or synthetic  $C_{10-20}$  e.g. a  $C_{12-14}$  alcohol with from 1 to 20, preferably 2 to 10 e.g. 3 to 4 ethyleneoxy groups, optionally stripping any unreacted alcohol, reacting the ethoxylated product with a sulphating agent and neutralising the resulting alkyl ether sulphuric acid with a base. The term also includes alkyl glyceryl sulphates, and random or block copolymerised alkyl ethoxy/propoxy sulphates.

The anionic surfactant may also comprise, for example,  $C_{10-20}$  e.g.  $C_{12-18}$  alkyl sulphate.

The surfactant may comprise a  $C_{8-20}$  e.g.  $C_{10-20}$  aliphatic soap. The soap may be saturated or unsaturated, straight or branched chain.

Preferred examples include dodecanoates, myristates, stearates, oleates, linoleates, linoleates and palmitates and coconut and tallow soaps.

The surfactant may include other anionic surfactants, such as olefin sulphonates, paraffin sulphonates, taurides, isethionates, ether sulphonates, ether carboxylates, aliphatic ester sulphonates e.g. alkyl glyceryl sulphonates, sulphosuccinates or sulphosuccinamates.

The cation of any anionic surfactant is typically sodium but may alternatively be potassium, lithium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, or an alkyl ammonium having up to 6 aliphatic carbon atoms including isopropyl ammonium, monoethanol ammonium, diethanol ammonium, and triethanol ammonium.

Ammonium and ethanol ammonium salts are generally more soluble than the sodium salts. Mixtures of the above cations may be used.

The composition may contain amphoteric surfactants such as betaines sulphobetaines, amido betaines or imidazoline betaines.

The  $I_1$  phase may be conveniently prepared by mixing the oil and oil soluble surfactant and adding sufficient water to the water soluble surfactant to maintain a lamellar phase. The oil and oil soluble surfactant may be stirred into the lamellar composition at elevated temperature, above the melting point of the desired  $I_1$  phase. The composition is then diluted with hot water until a microemulsion is formed and then cooled to solidify it into the  $I_1$  phase.

The oil is preferably a mineral oil (e.g. a low molecular weight petroleum ether having, for example, a boiling point below 120°C e.g. below 100°C especially below 80°C) or a lower molecular weight fatty ester (e.g. one having less than 25 carbon atoms) such as isopropyl esters of lauric isostearic or palmitic acids or their ethyl analogues. Other oils, including higher mol weight fatty esters, e.g. oleyl oleate, fatty glycerides, terpene oils such as limonene or silicone oils may present difficulties in providing clear compositions. Such oils can nevertheless be incorporated in clear formulations by blending with sufficient mineral oil (preferably low molecular weight mineral oil). The amount required varies according to the nature of the oil. Typically the blend contains at least 16%, based on the total weight of oil, of the mineral oil, especially 30 to 80%, typically 40 to 60%. Particularly preferred are vegetable oils such as coconut, evening primrose, groundnut, meadow foam, apricot kernel, peach kernel, avocado, jojoba and olive oil.

Oil soluble cosmetic or topical pharmaceutical ingredients may be dissolve in the oil including antiseptics, styptics, antidandruff agents such as zinc omadine (zinc pyrithione) and selenium disulphide, proteins, emollients such as lanolin, isopropyl myristate, glyceryl isostearate or propylene glycol distearate, dyes, perfumes and waxes. Water insoluble particulate solids including exfoliants such as talc, clays, polymer beads, sawdust, silica, seeds, ground nutshells and dicalcium phosphate, pearlisers such as mica or glycerol or ethylene glycol mono- or di-stearate, glitter additives and sunscreens such as titanium dioxide may be dispersed in the hot microemulsion prior to cooling. Porous particles (so called micro-sponges) containing absorbed active ingredients or gelatin or other microcapsules may be suspended. Other active ingredients which may be suspended include insect repellants and topical pharmaceutical preparations, e.g. preparations for treatment of acne, fungicides for athlete's foot or ringworm or antiseptics or antihistamines. Pigments, such as the iron oxides, may also be added.

Electrolytes tend to break I<sub>1</sub> phase structure and are preferably present in concentrations below 10% based on total weight of the compositions, more preferably below 5%, e.g. 0 to 3%, most preferably 0 to 1%. Generally we prefer that electrolyte be substantially absent. Adventitious chloride or sulphate present as impurities in the surfactant can be tolerated. Small amounts of builder such as citrates, pyrophosphates, polyphosphates may optionally be included.

Water soluble solvents are generally undesirable and are not required to form stable I<sub>1</sub> structures according to the invention. We therefore prefer that they should be substantially absent. Although small amounts of, for example, ethanol or propanol or of a water miscible polyhydric alcohol or alcohol ester may sometimes be desired for special purposes, they are preferably present in amounts less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 3% by weight, most preferably less than 2% by weight, e.g. less than 1% by weight.

The composition may optionally contain hydrotropes such as sodium lower alkyl benzene sulphonate e.g. sodium toluene, xylene or cumene sulphonate or urea, however these are not generally necessary and are not generally preferred. We prefer that these should be present in quantities less than 5% by weight, more preferably less than 4%. especially less than 2% e.g. 0 to 1%. They may be useful occasionally to avoid haziness of the gel.

The total amount of water is preferably from 25 to 60% by weight of the composition, more preferably 30 to 50%, e.g. 35 to 50%. The total weight percentage of surfactant based on the weight of the composition is preferably from 15 to 35%, e.g. 20 to 30%. The proportion of oil is preferably greater than 5%, more preferably greater than 8%, e.g. 10 to 30%, especially 15 to 25% by weight based on the weight of the composition. The oil soluble surfactant is preferably present in a proportion of more than 1:5 based on the weight of oil, more preferably from 1:2 to 5:1. The oil soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB of from 3 to 9 e.g. 4 to 8.

The weight ratio of water soluble surfactant to oil soluble surfactant is preferably 1:1 to 30:1, more preferably 2:1 to 20:1, typically 3:1 to 15:1, e.g. 4:1 to 10:1. The water soluble surfactant preferably has an HLB greater than 12, more preferably greater than 13, especially 14 to 19.

The product may be cast into shaped bodies or formed into particles or granules, e.g. by spray cooling a hot solution of the  $L_1$  phase formed on melting the composition.

The composition may be converted into a microemulsion phase by addition of water, by heating above the melting point or by adding electrolyte such as salt and the invention includes  $L_1$  phases when so prepared.

The invention will be illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

PCT/EP00/05341

| Component                                | Solids (%) | <u>w/w (%)</u> |
|--|------------|----------------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                       | 20         | 20             |
| "EMPICOL"® 0251/70J (70%)                | 11.2       | 16             |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                      | 4.8        | 16             |
| "GLUCAPON"® 215 CS UP (65%)              | 6          | 9.2            |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                    | 7.5        | 7.5            |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100%)                   | 2          | 2              |
| PERFUME (100%)                           | 0.5        | 0.5            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (190%). | 0.1        | 0.1            |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                       | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| BENZOIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.3        | 0.3            |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (47%)                   | 0.1        | 0.2            |
| WATER                                    |            | Balance        |

The method of mixing comprised the following steps:-

- 1. Charge 50% of water
- 2. Heat to 60°C
- 3. Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and 47% NaOH dissolve with stirring
- 4. Add "EMPIGEN" BB
- 5. Add mineral oil and disperse with stirring
- 6. Add "EMPILAN" KB 2 and mix thoroughly
- 7. Add "EMPICOL" 0251/70;
- 8 Add remaining water
- 9 Add "GLUCAPON" 215 CS UP
- 10. Add further KB 2 until clear
- 11. Cool
- 12. Add evaporated water
- 13. Adjust pH

### Physical Data

| pH (10%)   | $: 5.5 \pm 0.1$   | Density @ 20°C      | $: 1.0 \pm 0.1 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ |
|------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Solids (%) | : ~ 53% (typical) | Appearance          | : Clear or Hazy Gel               |
| Odour      | : Characteristic  | Set Point (typical) | : 30°C                            |

Viscosity @ 20°C : N/A

The product was examined by x-ray diffraction and exhibited peaks at 13.145nm (intense and sharp), 7.943nm (ill defined) and 6.355nm (small), indicating cubic symmetry, and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution or heating. The latter gave good even distribution of oil applied to skin.

#### Example 2

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form a ringing gel:

| Component                               | Solids (%) | <u>w/w (%)</u> |
|---|------------|----------------|
| MINERAL OIL (100%)                      | 15         | 15             |
| "EMPICOL"® CDL30J/35 (22%)              | 8          | 35.4           |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)                     | 8          | 26.7           |
| "EMPICOL"® 0785 (40%)                   | 2          | 5              |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)                   | 6          | 6              |
| "EMPILAN"® KB6 (100%)                   | 6          | 6              |
| CITRIC ACID (100%)                      | 0.5        | 0.5            |
| PERFUME (100%)                          | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100%) | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| "KATHON"®                               |            | 0.2            |
| WATER                                   |            | Balance        |
| TOTAL                                   | 45.8       | 100            |

#### Physical Data

Appearance : Clear Liquid/Gel Odour : Characteristic Odour

Solids : 36.5% (typical) pH (100%) : 5.5 - 6.5 (typical)

Odour : Characteristic Set Point :  $20 \pm 5^{\circ}$ C

Viscosity (Carrimed Rheometer @ 20°C : N/A

The product had small angle x-ray diffraction peaks characteristic of cubic symmetry and formed a clear microemulsion on dilution with water or warming. The latter gave good even deposition of oil on skin.

# Examples 3 and 4

The following ingredients were mixed at 60°C and cooled to form ringing gels:

|                            | 1          |         | 2          |         |
|----------------------------|------------|---------|------------|---------|
| Component                  | Solids (%) | w/w (%) | Solids (%) | w/w (%) |
| "EMPIGEN"® CDL30J/35 (22%) | 8          | 36.4    | 8          | 36.4    |
| "EMPIGEN"® BB (30%)        | 8          | 26.7    | 8          | 26.7    |
| "EMPICOL"® LB40 (40%)      | 4          | 7.5     | 3          | 7.5     |
| "EMPICOL"® CVH (90%)       | 4          | 4       |            |         |
| "EMPILAN"® KB2 (100%)      | 5.5        | 5.5     | 6          | 6       |
| TRIETHANOLAMINE (100%)     | - 1.1      | 1.1     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID                | " 1        | Q.75 .  | 0.75       | 0.75    |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE           |            |         |            |         |
| TETRACETIC ACID            | 0.05       | 0.05    | 0.05       | 0.05    |
| "KATHON"® CG (100%)        | 0.05       | 0.05    | 0.05       | 0.05    |
| LIGHT MINERAL (100%)       | 14         | 14      | 20         | 20      |
| WATER                      |            | Balance |            | Balance |
| TOTAL                      | 45.7       | 100     | 46.1       | 100     |
| Appearance                 | Clear Gel  | 1       | Clear Gel  |         |

The following ingredients were mixed at 60 °C and cooled to form a clear 'ringing' gel.

# Example 5

| Component LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %) | 18  | 18      |
|--|-----|---------|
| SENTING (1 " @ 0251 70 1 (70 %)  | 12  |         |
| 1 TEMPICOL @ 0231 /03 (/0 /0)  |     | 17.2    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)  | 5   | j 5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KBE2 (100 %)   | 3   | 3       |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB6 (100 %)  | 3   | 3       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)  | 33  | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)  | 4   | 4       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)   | 2   | 2       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)  | 0.4 | 0.8     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)   | 0.1 | 0.1     |
| Na SALT  |     |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)  | 0.2 | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)  | 0.3 | 0.3     |
| WATER  |     | Balance |

## Example 6

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%)  |
|---|------------|----------|
| HEAVY MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M70) (100 %) | 18         | 18       |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 10.5       | 15       |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6          | 6        |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB2 (100 %)                     | 3.5        | 3.5      |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | 5          | 5        |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10       |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 4          | 4        |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 2          | 1 2      |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | 1.0      |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1      |
| Na SALT                                     |            | <u> </u> |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2      |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3      |
| WATER                                       | <u> </u>   | Balance  |

#### Physical Data

Density @ 20°C

: 1.0 +/- 0.1

pH (10%)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

## Method for examples 5 and 6

- i) Charge water and heat to 60°C.
- ii) Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and NaOH. Dissolve with stirring
- iii) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL and mix thoroughly.
- iv) Add glycerol.
- v) Add NaCl and disperse with stirring.
- vi) Add "EMPILAN" KBE2 and "EMPILAN" KB6 or "EMPILAN" KB12. Disperse with stirring.
- vii) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- viii) Add mineral and disperse with stirring.
- ix) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J and disperse with stirring.
- x) Add additional nonionic surfactant to clear (if necessary).
- xi) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xii) Add evaporated water
- xiii) Adjust pH and offload.

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%)     |
|---|------------|-------------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 9          | 9           |
| DOW CORNING DC 556 SILICONE FLUID (100 %)   | 9          | 9           |
| DOW CORNING DC 330 SIEICONE 12012 (***)     | 12         | 17.2        |
| "EMPICOL" 0251 70 J (70 %)                  | 5.         | 5           |
| "EMPICOL" CED5 FL (100 %)                   | 3.5        | 3.5         |
| "EMPILAN" KB2 (100 %)                       | 3.5        | 3.5         |
| "EMPILAN" KB12 (100 %)                      | 3          | 10          |
| "EMPIGEN" BB (30 %)                         | 4          | 4           |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 2          | 2 ::        |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 0.4        | 0.8         |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.1        | 0.1         |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 7.0         |
| Na SALT                                     | 0.2        | 0.2         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.3         |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.5        | Balance     |
| WATER                                       |            | 1 Duita 100 |

The formulation forms a microemulsion at 60°C and forms a gel when cooled to ambient temperature.

 $i \, \chi_{\lambda}^{2}$ 

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%)            |
|---|------------|--------------------|
| HEAVY MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M70) (100 %) | 15         | 15 .               |
| "CERAPHYL" ® GA-D (100 %)                   | 5          | 5                  |
| "EMPICOL" 0251 70 J (70 %)                  | 12         | 17.2               |
| "EMPICOL" CED5 FL (100 %)                   | 5          | 5                  |
| "EMPILAN" KBE2 (100 %)                      | 3.0        | 3.0                |
| "EMPILAN" KB12 (100 %)                      | 4.5        | 4.5                |
| "EMPIGEN" BB (30 %)                         | 3          | 10                 |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 4          | 4                  |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 2          | 2                  |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | • 0.4      | ı <sub>:</sub> 0.8 |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | . 0.1      | 0.1                |
| Na SALT                                     |            |                    |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2                |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3                |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance            |

A hazy/opaque emulsion is formed at 60°C and cools to form a clear 'ringing' gel at ambient temperature.

#### Physical Data

Density @ 20°C

: 1.0 +/- 0.1

pH (10 %)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

## Method for examples 7 and 8

- i) Charge water and heat to 60°C.
- ii) Add EDTA, sodium benzoate, citric acid and NaOH. Dissolve with stirring.
- iii) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL and mix thoroughly.
- iv) Add glycerol.
- v) Add NaCl and disperse with stirring.
- vi) Add "EMPILAN" KBE2 and "EMPILAN" KB12. Disperse with stirring.
- vii) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- viii) Blend 50/50 oil phase oil and cosmetic ingredient. Add to aqueous surfactant solution. Disperse with stirring to form homogeneous emulsion.
- ix) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J and disperse.
- x) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xi) Add evaporated water.
- xii) Adjust pH and offload.

If gel is opaque, re-heat and add additional nonionic surfactant or water.

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 10         | 10      |
| "MIGLYOL" ® 810/812S                        | 10         | 10      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 11         | 15.7    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6 .        | . 6     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KBE2 (100 %)                    | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3 .        | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 5          | 5       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 1          | 1       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | 1       |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       |            | Balance |

Hazy emulsion clears to form a microemulsion on cooling and 'ringing' gel is obtained at ambient temperature.

| Component .                                 | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 10         | 10      |
| "MIGLYOL" ® 818 (100 %)                     | 10         | 10      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 11         | 15.7    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN" ® KBE2 (100 %)                    | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | . 5        | 5       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 5          | 5       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 1          | 1       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | . 1     |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            | • • •   |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       | · -        | Balance |

Forms a microemulsion at 60°C and a 'ringing' gel is obtained after cooling.

# Example 11

| Component                                   | Solids (%) | W/W (%) |
|---|------------|---------|
| LIGHT MINERAL OIL ("KRISTOL" ® M14) (100 %) | 10         | 10      |
| "MIGLYOL" ® 840                             | 10         | 10      |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)                | 11         | 15.7    |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)                 | 6          | 6       |
| "EMPILAN" KBE2 (100 %)                      | 3.5        | 3.5     |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB12 (100 %)                    | 5          | 5       |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                       | 3          | 10      |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                     | 5          | 5       |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                            | 1          | 1       |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                     | 0.5        | 1       |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %)    | 0.1        | 0.1     |
| Na SALT                                     |            |         |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                         | 0.2        | 0.2     |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                     | 0.3        | 0.3     |
| WATER                                       | -          | Balance |

## Physical Data

Density @ 20°C

: 1.0 +/- 0.1

pH (10%)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

## Method for examples 9, 10 and 11

- i) Blend 50/50 oil phase oil and cosmetic ingredient. Heat to  $60^{\circ}$ C.
- ii) Add glycerol and stir to disperse.
- iii) Add "EMPILAN" KBE2 and "EMPILAN" KB12. Disperse with stirring.
- iv) Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL.
- v) Add "EMPIGEN" BB.
- vi) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J.
- vii) Add EDTA, citric acid, sodium benzoate and NaCl. Disperse with stirring.
- viii) Add water.
- ix) Add NaOH.
- x) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xi) Add evaporated water.
- xii) Adjust pH and offload.

| C mponent                                | Solids (%) | <u>W/W (%)</u> |
|--|------------|----------------|
| EMOLLIENT - FATTY ACID ESTER (100 %)     | 20         | 20             |
| "EMPICOL" ® 0251 70 J (70 %)             | 12         | 17.2           |
| "EMPICOL" ® CED5 FL (100 %)              | 5          | 5              |
| "EMPILAN" ® KB6 (100 %)                  | 5          | 5              |
| "EMPIGEN" ® BB (30 %)                    | .3         | 10             |
| SODIUM CHLORIDE (100 %)                  | 5          | 5              |
| GLYCEROL (100 %)                         | 1          | 1              |
| SODIUM HYDROXIDE (50 %)                  | 0,4        | 0.8            |
| ETHYLENE DIAMINE TETRACETIC ACID (100 %) | 0.1        | 0.1            |
| Na SALT                                  |            |                |
| CITRIC ACID (100 %)                      | 0.2        | 0.2            |
| SODIUM BENZOATE (100 %)                  | 0.3        | 0.3            |
| WATER                                    | -          | Balance        |

Clear gels have been prepared using the following fatty acid esters:

Isopropyl laurate ("ESTOL" ® IPL 1505) Isopropyl myristate ("ESTOL" ® IPM 1512) Isopropyl palmitate ("ESTOL" ® IPP 1517) Isopropyl isostearate ("SCHERCOMOL" ® 318)

### **Physical Data**

Density @ 20<sup>0</sup>C

: 1.0 +/- 0.1

pH (10 %)

: 5.5 +/- 0.5

Appearance: Clear or hazy gel

Odour

: Characteristic

Set point (typical): 35 +/- 5°C

Viscosity @ 20°C: N/A

### Method for example 12

- Heat oil phase to 60°C. i)
- Add "EMPILAN" KB6 and stir to disperse. ii)
- Add glycerol and stir to disperse. iii)
- Add "EMPIGEN" BB. iv)
- Add "EMPICOL" CED5 FL. v)

- vi) Add "EMPICOL" 0251 70J.
- vii) Add EDTA, NaCl, sodium benzoate and citric acid. Stir to disperse.
- viii) Add water.
- ix) Add NaOH.
- x) Cool to  $40^{\circ}$ C.
- xi) Add evaporated water.
- xii) Check pH (10 %).
- xiii) Adjust pH and offload.

The products in each case exhibited cubic symmetry and formed clear microemulsions or dilution with water or heating. The registered trade marks noted above have the following significance:-

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" CVH is a C<sub>8</sub> alkyl ether carboxylic acid

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" LB40 is a C<sub>8</sub> C<sub>10</sub> alkyl sulphate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" 0251/70J is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 3 mole ethoxy sulphate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" 9758 is a C10 alkyl sulphate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPICOL" CED 5FL is lauryl 6 mole ethoxy carboxylic acid

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPIGEN" BB is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl betaine

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPIGEN" CDL is coconut ampho acetate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPILAN" KB2 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 2 mole ethoxylate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPILAN" KB6 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 6 mole ethoxylate

<sup>&</sup>quot;EMPILAN" KB12 is a C<sub>12-14</sub> alkyl 12 mole ethoxylate

<sup>&</sup>quot;GLUCAPON" 215CS is a C<sub>8-10</sub> alkyl polyclucoside D.P. 1.5

<sup>&</sup>quot;KATHON" CG is a proprietary biocide

<sup>&</sup>quot;DOW CORNING" DC556 is phenyl trimethicone

<sup>&</sup>quot;CERAPHYL" GA-D is maleated soya bean oil

<sup>&</sup>quot;MIGLYOL" 810/812S is capric/caprylic triglyceride

<sup>&</sup>quot;MIGLYOL" is capric/caprylic/linoleic trigyceride

<sup>&</sup>quot;MIGLYOL" 840 is dipropylene glycol dicaprylate/dicaprate

#### **CLAIMS**

- 1. A concentrated personal cleansing composition comprising, by weight of the composition, at least 20% water, 10 to 40% total surfactant and 2 to 40% of oil wherein said surfactant comprises (A) an oil soluble surfactant having an HLB of from 2 to 10 in a proportion of from 8:1 to 1:5 based on the weight of oil and (B) a hydrophilic surfactant having an HLB greater than 11, in a weight proportion of from 1:1 to 1:30 based on the weight of (A), said surfactant water and oil being present in proportions adapted to form an I<sub>1</sub> phase having an I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature greater than 25°C.
- 2. A composition according to claim 1 wherein the total surfactant has a mean HLB between 10 and 15.
- 3. A composition according to claim 1 wherein said oil comprises a mineral, fatty ester, glyceride, terpene or silicone oil
- 4. A composition according to either of claims 1 and 3 wherein the oil comprises at least 16% based on the weight of oil, of a mineral oil.
- 5. A method for preparing a composition according to claim 1 comprising: (i) forming a mixture (a) of said oil and said oil soluble surfactant; (ii) mixing said mixture (a) with a mixture (b) of said water soluble surfactant and sufficient water to form a lamellar phase with said water soluble surfactant; (iii) maintaining said mixture of (a) and (b) above the I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature of said composition while diluting said mixture of (a) and (b) with water to form said composition; and (iv) cooling said composition below the I<sub>1</sub>/L<sub>1</sub> transition temperature.

|  | FORM PTO-1390  | U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COM   | MERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE  | ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER  |  |
|--|--|--|--|---|--|
|  | (REV 9-2001)   | מכי מיייר או זו דייי דו  | TO THE UNITED STATES   | 01795/HG  |  |
| - 1  | IKAI   | NOMILIAL LEI IN  | ED OFFICE (DO/FO/US)   | i PPLICATION NO. (If known, see 37 CFR 1.5  |  |
| - 1  | DESIGNATED/ELE_TED OFFICE (DO/EO/US) CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371   |  |  |   |  |
| ı  |  |  | INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE  | PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED   |  |
|  |  | NAL APPLICATION NO.  |  | JUNE 10, 1999   |  |
| ļ  | PCT/EPO  |  | JUNE 9, 2000   | 1 00NE 10, 1999   | 1  |
| 1  | TITLE OF INVENTION PERSONAL CARE FORMULATIONS  |  |  |   | 1  |
| ŀ  | APPLICANTO   | s) FOR DO/EO/US Kevan  | HATCHMAN, Elvin LUKENBACH,   | Laura MCCULLOCH and   | ł  |
| ı  |  | Bennai   | MIN WIRLAND  |   | Į.   |
| ŀ  | * *  | the following items and other information:   |  |   |  |
| 1XX This is a FIRST submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.  2. This is a SECOND or SUBSEQUENT submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.  3. This is an express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)). The submission must include |  |  |  |   |  |
|  |  |  |  |   |  |
|  |  |  |  |   | 1  |
| ı  | items (5), (6), (9) and (21) indicated below.  4. XX The US has been elected by the expiration of 19 months from the priority date (Article 31).  5. XX A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2))   |  |  |   |  |
| - 1  |  |  |  |   |  |
| - 1  | 5. XX A cop  | y of the International Applicat  | ion as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2))  if only if not communicated by the Internation   | mai Bureau) / Ac WO 00 / 76460 A2)  |  |
|  |  | is attached hereto (required by has been communicated by   |  | ma bucas. (AS NO 007 70400 AZ 7   | 1  |
| - 1  | 7  |  | ication was filed in the United States Receiv  | ing Office (RO/IIS)   | l  |
|  | c. L   | •  |  |   | l  |
|  | _  | <u>-</u>   | he International Application as filed (35 U.S  | s.c. 371(c)(±)).  |  |
| Zajama   | a.   | is attached hereto.  |  |   | l .  |
|  |  | FDIGUALIE HOLT   |  |   | - sama amai  |
| FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN, LANGER &   |  |  |  |   | 229  |
|  | 1.916-1  | CHICK, P.C.  ATTORNEYS-AT-LAW  767 THIRD AVENUE, 25TH FLOOR  |  |   |  |
| ì  | <u>8</u>   | NEW YORK, NY 10017-2023  |  |   |  |
| i  | `~   |  |  | D 1 7 0004  |  |
|  | ≿<br>Z<br>→ PAY  |  |  | December 7, 2001 DATE   |  |
|  | PAY TO TO TO ORD   |  | ENTS AND TRADEMARKS  | December 7, 2001 DATE   \$ 890.00   | eenst 0  |
| \$   | New York NY DAY OBD  | PER OF   | ENTS AND TRADEMARKS  | \$ 890.00   | A level  |
| (  | USA New York NY CAN A CA | ER OF HUNDRED NIN  | ETY and 00/100   | \$ 890.00   | A Socurity<br>Feetures<br>Details on<br>Back.  |
| (  | Bank USA New York NY OLD   | IGHT HUNDRED NIN THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION   | ETY and 00/100   | \$ 890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN   | 3 Security<br>Features<br>Decktion   |
| HSBC (X)   | C Bank USA New Yor   | EIGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTIO  01795/HG -  New PCT App   | ETY and 00/100  NMTH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  lication "PERSONAL  | \$ 890.00   | Security<br>Features<br>Datasis on<br>each   |
| (  | HSBC Bank USA New York NY LOLD ADD ADD ADD ADD ADD ADD ADD ADD ADD A   | EIGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  01795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL   | ETY and 00/100  NMTH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  lication "PERSONAL  | \$ 890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN   | Security<br>Feetures<br>1 Disasts on<br>Sect.  |
| (  | າ ເ  | IGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  01795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMULA  Filing Fee   | ETY and 00/100  NMITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"   | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security<br>Features<br>Deskin on<br>Cask  |
| (  | າ ເ  | EIGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  01795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL   | ETY and 00/100  NMITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"   | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security  Datable on Beck  |
| (  | າ ເ  | IGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  01795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMULA  Filing Fee   | ETY and 00/100  NMITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"   | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security<br>Features<br>Distance<br>Seatures   |
| (  | L.E.   | IGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  01795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMULA  Filing Fee   | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Decurity Franciscon Medical Me |
| (  | 13. XX A F   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMULA  Filing Fee  II* OB 4 229 II* 100 6   | ETY and 00/100  NMITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  LICOLOBB: 615001939  | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security  Details on Sect.   |
| (  | 13. XX A I   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG - New PCT App CARE FORMULA Filing Fee  II OB L 229 II IIO  FIRST preliminary amendment SECOND or SUBSEQUENT I  | ETY and 00/100  NMITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  LICOLOBB: 615001939  | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security<br>Features<br>Parties on<br>Parties  |
| (  | 13. XX A F<br>14. A S<br>15. As  | ER OF  IGHT HUNDRED NIN  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  01795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL,  Filing Fee  IIIOBL 229IIIIO  ESSIGNMENT AMERICAN  FIRST preliminary amendment  SECOND or SUBSEQUENT IN  SUBSTITUTE SPECIFICATION.   | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Coreliminary amendment.   | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security  Dotatils on Back   |
| (  | 13. XX A F<br>14. A S<br>15. As  | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG - New PCT App CARE FORMULA Filing Fee  II OB L 229 II IIO  FIRST preliminary amendment SECOND or SUBSEQUENT I  | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Coreliminary amendment.   | \$ 890.00  STATE  \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security<br>Features<br>Patters on<br>Cases  |
| (  | 13. XX A F 14. A S 15. As 16. XX A G   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  III OB 4 229 III IIO 6  FIRST preliminary amendment SECOND or SUBSEQUENT in the substitute specification.  Change of power of attorney and inchange of pow | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Coreliminary amendment.   | \$ 890.00  DOLLARS  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN  LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security  Details on Sect.   |
| (  | 13. XX A I 14. A S 15. As 16. XX A G   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  II OB 4 2 2 9 II I I O O  EXECUTE OF THE CONNECTION OF SUBSEQUENT SUBSTITUTE SPECIFICATION.  Change of power of attorney and computer-readable form of the c | ETY and 00/100  NMITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S) HATCHMAN et al. lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  L. breliminary amendment.  d/or address letter.  | \$ 890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  | Security  Dotatis en Beck  |
| (  | 13. XX A E 14. A S 15. As 16. XX A G 17. A S   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  II OB 4 229 II IIO  FIRST preliminary amendment  SECOND or SUBSEQUENT of the computer-readable form of the second copy of the published in the computer of the second copy of the published in the computer of the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL  ATIONS"  Loreliminary amendment.  d/or address letter.  sequence listing in accordance with PCT Ru  | FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  IIII IIII IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII  | Security Particular an Bect.   |
| (  | 13. XX A B 14. A S 15. As 16. XX A G 17. A G 18. A S   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  II OB 4 229 II IIO  FIRST preliminary amendment  SECOND or SUBSEQUENT of the computer-readable form of the second copy of the published in the computer of the second copy of the published in the computer of the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of the computer of the computer of the published in the computer of | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL  ATIONS"  Loreliminary amendment.  d/or address letter.  sequence listing in accordance with PCT Runternational application under 35 U.S.C. 154  | # 890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  Ille 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.821 - 1.825.  (d)(4).  Express Mail Mailing Label   | Security February Security Feb |
| (  | 13. XX A II  14. A S  15. A S  16. XX A G  17. A S  19. A S  20. XX Oth  | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG - New PCT App CARE FORMULA Filing Fee  III OB 4 229 III III OF  EXECUTE TO SUBSEQUENT FOR THE PROPERTY OF THE  | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL  ATIONS"  Loreliminary amendment.  d/or address letter.  sequence listing in accordance with PCT Runternational application under 35 U.S.C. 154  | FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  Let 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.821 - 1.825.  (d)(4).  Agricon under 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).  | MP   |
| (  | 13. XX A II 14. A S 15. A S 16. XX A G 17. A G 18. A S 19. A S 20. XX Oth (i) Cop (ii) PCT   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG - New PCT App CARE FORMULA Filing Fee  III OB L 229 III III OF  EXECUTE TO SUBSEQUENT SUBSTITUTE TO SECOND OF SUBSEQUENT SUBSTITUTE TO THE SECOND OF THE PUBLISHED IN COMPUTER TO THE SECOND OF THE PUBLISHED IN COMPUTER THE SECOND OF THE PUBLISHED IN CONNECTION OF THE PUBLISHED I | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL  ATIONS"  Lication "PERSONAL  ATIONS"  Coreliminary amendment.  Indoor address letter.  Sequence listing in accordance with PCT Runternational application under 35 U.S.C. 154  Indoor address letter.   | # 890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  Ile 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.821 - 1.825.  (d)(4).  Express Mail Mailing Label No.: ET, 874, 117, 723, US Date of Deposit: December 7, 200 I hereby certify that this paper is being  | 01   |
| (  | 12   | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  III OB L 229 III III OF  ESCOND or SUBSEQUENT IN COMPUTE SECOND or SUBSEQUENT IN COMPUTE SECOND OF S | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Lication "BERSONAL ATIONS"  Coreliminary amendment.  Indoor address letter.  Sequence listing in accordance with PCT Runternational application under 35 U.S.C. 154  International application of the international application of the international application poort)  The poort of the international application | # 890.00  ### Service Express Mail Post Office to   |  |
| (  | 13. XX A II 13. XX A II 14. A S 15. A S 16. XX A S 17. A S 19. A S 20. XX Oth (i) Cop (ii) PCI (iii) PCI (iii) PCI (iv) PCI  | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  II OB L 229II ICO  FIRST preliminary amendment  ECOND or SUBSEQUENT of the computer-readable form of the computer-rea | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL  ATIONS"  L.  Preliminary amendment.  d/or address letter.  sequence listing in accordance with PCT Ru  International application under 35 U.S.C. 154  aguage translation of the international application  port)  ty Document Sent)  sent to U.S.)  | # 890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  It is 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.821 - 1.825.  It is 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 154(d)(4).  Express Mail Mailing Label No.: EI, 874 117 723 US Date of Deposit: December 7, 200 I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Postal Service Express Mail Post Office to Addressee' service under 37 CFR 1.10 date indicated above and is addressed   | on the   |
| (  | 13. XX A II  13. XX A II  14. A S  15. A S  16. XX A G  17. A G  18. A S  19. A S  20. XX Oth  (i) Cop  (ii) PCI  (iii) PCI  (iv) PCI  (v) REQU  | THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  THIS CHECK IS DELIVERED IN CONNECTION  O1795/HG -  New PCT App  CARE FORMUL.  Filing Fee  II OB L 229II ICO  FIRST preliminary amendment  ECOND or SUBSEQUENT of the computer-readable form of the computer-rea | ETY and 00/100  N WITH THE FOLLOWING ACCOUNT (S)  HATCHMAN et al.  Lication "PERSONAL ATIONS"  Lication "BERSONAL ATIONS"  Coreliminary amendment.  Indoor address letter.  Sequence listing in accordance with PCT Runternational application under 35 U.S.C. 154  International application of the international application of the international application poort)  The poort of the international application | ## \$890.00  FRISHAUF, HOLTZ, GOODMAN LANGER & CHICK, P.C.  Ile 13ter.2 and 35 U.S.C. 1.321 - 1.325.  (d)(4).  Express Mail Mailing Label No.: FI, 874.117.723 US Date of Deposit: December 7, 200 I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Posta Service Express Mail Post Office to Addressee' service under 37 CFR 1.10 of Addressee' service under 37 CFR 1.10 of Deposits of Deposits of Deposits of Deposits of Deposits December 7, 200  I hereby certify that this paper is being deposited with the United States Posta Service Express Mail Post Office to Addressee' service under 37 CFR 1.10 of Deposits | on the   |